



GALAXY *J*

SC-02F

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

'13. 10



Introduction

Thank you for purchasing "SC-02F" mobile terminal. Before and during use of your terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this instruction manual to ensure you are able to correctly use your terminal.

Manual

■ "クイックスタートガイド (Quick start guide)" (included in basic package) (In Japanese only)

Screen view contents and operations of basic function are explained.

■ "Instruction Manual" (guide application of the terminal) (In Japanese only)

Detailed guidance of each function → the operations are explained.

- From the Home screen,  and tap "Instruction Manual".
For some functions, tap the written contents, and you can see the content or start the function directly from the description.
- For the first time, download and install the application according to onscreen instructions.
- For installing "Instruction Manual" application if you uninstalled it, from the Home screen, search "SC-02F 取扱説明書 (SC-02F Instruction manual)" in "Play Store" and download "Instruction Manual" application.

■ "INSTRUCTION MANUAL" (PDF file)

Detailed guidance of each function and operations are explained.

- Download from NTT DOCOMO website:
<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/manual/download/index.html>
- * You can download the updated information of the Quick start guide (in Japanese only). URL and the contents are subject to change without prior notice.

Operation descriptions

In this manual, the operation steps such as the menu operations are simply described as follows.

- "Tap" is an operation of touching lightly the display of the terminal with finger (P.72).

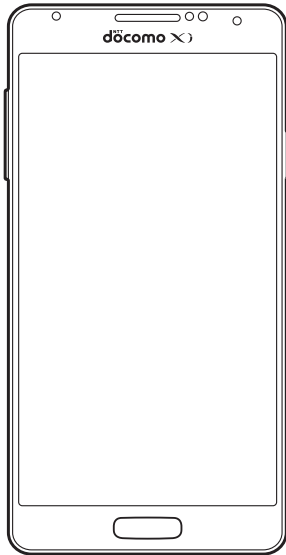
(Example) For tapping  (Applications icon) on the Home screen to display the application menu and then, tapping  (Google icon), the operation is described as follows.

1 From the Home screen, → "Google"

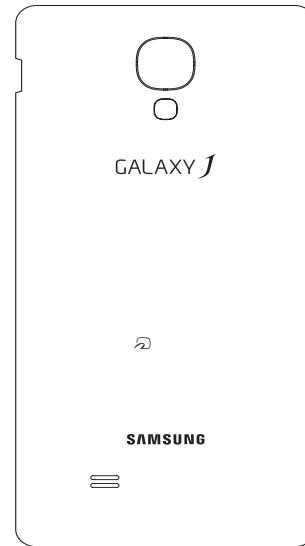
- In this manual, the operation steps and screen images are described in default status. The operation steps or screen image on the terminal may vary by the service you use or application you installed.
- This manual describes in the case of "docomo LIVE UX" as the Home application. From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → Tap "Change home", you can switch home application.
- The images and illustration used in this manual are examples. They may differ from the actual displays.
- In this manual, function or setting that is available in multiple operations are explained mostly with the easily understandable operation steps.
- In this manual, "SC-02F" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "terminal". Please be forewarned.
- Reproduction of the content of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The content of this manual is subject to change without notice.

Accessories

SC-02F
(including the written
warranty)



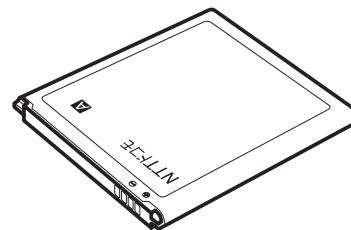
Back Cover SC12



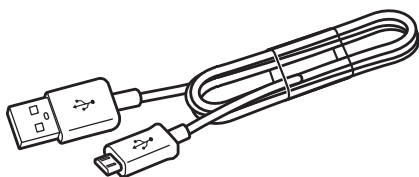
Quick start guide
(Japanese)



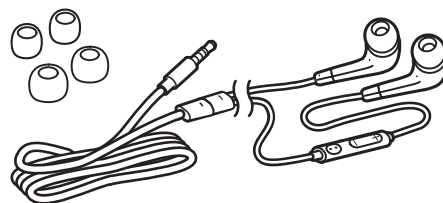
Battery Pack SC11



USB Cable SC02



Stereo Headset with
Microphone (sample)



Other options → P.508

Contents

Assembling	Accessories 2
	About usage of the terminal ... 7
	Safety precautions (Always follow these directions) ... 10
	Handling precautions..... 36
Getting started	Part names and functions ... 51
	docomo mini UIM card 54
	Battery pack 57
	Charging 60
	Turning power ON/OFF 65
	Basic Operation 71
	Character entry 84
	Initial settings 98
	Notification LED 101
	Display and icons 102
	Home screen..... 111
	Apps screen 119
	Using Quick search box 132
	Searching by S Finder 137
	Recently-used applications... 138
	Task manager 138
	Switching home applications ... 139
	Enabling Emergency mode ... 140
docomo LIVE UX	Home screen..... 142
	Managing Home screen 144
	Apps screen 157
	Managing applications 158
	Searching applications 160
	Installing "Recommends" applications 160
	Apps layout setting 161
	Home screen information..... 161

Calling	Making a call 162 Receiving a call 168 Operation during a call 172 Call logs 175 Answering message 179 Making an international call (WORLD CALL) 180 Call settings 182 Phonebook 195 docomo backup 209
Mail/Web browser	sp-mode mail 210 SMS 211 Email 220 Gmail 236 Early Warning "Area Mail" 238 Web browser 241
Apps	dmenu 253 dmarket 254 Play Store 254 Samsung Apps 256 Osaifu-Keitai 257 ToruCa 263 Mobacas 265 TV (1Seg) 277 Camera 298 Gallery 318 Player 326 GPS/Navigation 339 Clock 343 S Planner 348 S Note 349 Voice Recorder 357 Calculator 361 docomo backup 362 YouTube 366 Dictionary 368 POLARIS Office 371

Apps	S Health 374 S Voice..... 377
Settings	Setting menu 379 "Connections" tab 380 "Device" tab 401 "Controls" tab 422 "General" tab 429
File management	Storage folder structure 458 File operation 463
Data communication	Bluetooth 469 NFC communication 475
External device connection	Connecting to a PC 478 Samsung Link 482 Connecting to printer 485 Connecting DNLA device ... 486 Group Play 489 Displaying on the TV screen via HML connection 492
International roaming	Overview of international roaming (WORLD WING)..... 494 Available services 495 Before using the terminal ... 496 Making/Receiving calls in the country you stay 500 International roaming settings 504 After returning to Japan 507

Appendix/ Index

Introduction of options and related devices	508
Sample	510
Troubleshooting	512
Smartphone Anshin Remote Support	533
Warranty and After-Sales Service	534
Updating software	540
Main specifications	543
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones	551
Export Administration Regulations	561
Intellectual Property Right ..	562
Canceling SIM Lock	567
Index	568

About usage of the terminal

- The terminal supports LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS, and wireless LAN.
- Because your terminal uses wireless transmission, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio waves are weak, or out of Xi service area and FOMA service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your terminal indicates there are strong radio waves and you are not moving (traveling).
- Because your terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically applies a confidential communication function to all calls, so even if a third party could somehow tap a call, they only hear noise.
- The terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- The terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- Note down the information saved in the terminal in a separate note and keep it safely. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of the terminal.

- Although the display is manufactured with extremely advanced technology, some dots may not be lit or be always lit. It is characteristic of the display and not malfunction. Please be forewarned.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card.
- If the microSD card or the terminal internal storage does not have enough memory, running applications may not work normally. In such case, delete saved data.
- DOCOMO shall not be liable for commercially available optional equipment.
- As with PCs, some applications that you perform installation may give the terminal instability of the operation, or may send your location information or personal information registered to the terminal to outside via the Internet and the information may be used improperly. Therefore, verify the supplier and operating conditions of the applications before use them.
- Only the docomo mini UIM card is available for the terminal. If you have the UIM card or the FOMA card, exchange it for the docomo mini UIM card at the docomo Shop.
- The terminal does not support accessing i-mode site (programs) and i-α ppli, etc.
- The terminal automatically performs communication for some functions, for example, to synchronize data, check the latest software, maintain connection with the server, etc. And when you download applications or watch video etc., a large amount of packet communication charges are executed. Therefore, it is highly recommended to use packet flat-rate service.
- Depending on applications or services you use, a packet communication fee may be charged even if you perform Wi-Fi communication.
- As Mobacas is a service using communications, using the service incurs packet communication charge. Subscription of packet flat-rate service is

recommended.

- The terminal does not support Public mode (Driving mode).
- In the terminal, sounds (video sound, music shutter sound, etc.) other than ringtone and each notification are not muted even when Silent (Mute, Vibrate) is set.
- Follow the instruction below to view your phone number. From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "About device" → Tap "Status".
- You can update software of the terminal to the latest one (P.540).
- In the terminal, functions may be added or operation steps may be changed due to upgrading Operating System (OS). For latest information of additional function or operation steps, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- When OS is upgraded, some applications used for former OS may not work or unintended failure may occur.
- Google applications or services are subject to change without prior notice.
- For services provided by Google, thoroughly read the Terms of use of Google Inc. And for other web services, read each terms of use.
- In case of loss of the terminal, set the screen to ensure the security of the terminal.
- If you lose your terminal, change password of online service accounts from PC for that Google Services such as Gmail, Google Play, and Facebook, etc. should not be used by others.
- The terminal does not support service providers other than sp-mode.
- To use tethering, you must subscribe to sp-mode.
- Depending on your price plan, packet communication fee when using tethering differs. Using packet flat-rate service is highly recommended.
- For details, refer to <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english>

Safety precautions (Always follow these directions)

- Before using your terminal, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines.

 DANGER	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
 WARNING	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
 CAUTION	This sign denotes that minor injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

■ The symbols below show specific directions.

 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
 No liquids	This symbol denotes that using phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
 No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
 Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
 Unplug	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ Precautions contain the description below.

1. Handling the terminal, battery pack,
adapter, USB connection cable and docomo
mini UIM card (common) P.13
2. Handling the terminal P.17
3. Handling battery pack..... P.22
4. Handling adapter P.25
5. Handling docomo mini UIM card..... P.28
6. Handling mobile phones near electronic
medical equipment P.29
7. Material list P.31
8. Handling samples (Stereo Headset with
Microphone)..... P.33

1. Handling the terminal, battery pack, adapter, USB connection cable and docomo mini UIM card (common)

DANGER



Do not use, store, or leave the terminal, battery pack, adapter, or docomo mini UIM card in a place subject to high temperature (such as close to fire or heating devices, inside kotatsu, under direct sunlight, or in a car on an extremely hot day).
May cause fire, burns or injuries.



Do not put the terminal into heating cooking device such as microwave oven or high-pressure container.
May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the equipment.
May cause fires, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Do not let the terminal get wet with water, drinking water, urine of pet animals, sweat, etc.
May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



No
liquids

Keep liquid (water, drinking water, urine of pet animals, sweat, etc.) from entering in the charging jack, external connection jack.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Do

Use the optional equipment specified by NTT DOCOMO for the terminal.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



WARNING



Don't

Do not throw the equipment, or give excessive force or hard shock to it.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Don't

Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging jack, external connection jack or headphone connection jack. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Don't

Do not cover or wrap the terminal with a blanket, etc. while using or charging.

May cause fire or burns.



Do

Turn the terminal OFF and stop charging before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated.

The gas may catch fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place such as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it. (When NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)



Do

If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations.

- Remove the power plug from all outlets or cigarette lighter sockets.
- Turn the terminal OFF.
- Remove the battery pack from the terminal.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.

CAUTION



Don't

Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.

The terminal may fall and cause injuries.



Don't

Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Make sure they are following the instructions when using the terminal.

May cause injuries.



Do

Store the equipment out of reach of small children.

May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.



Do

Be careful especially when using the terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.

If you are playing game, watching 1 Seg, etc. while charging the battery for a long time, the terminal, battery pack and adapter may be heated.

Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

2. Handling the terminal

WARNING

 **Do not point the infrared port to your eyes when sending data.**
Don't May cause harmful effect on eyes.

 **Do not direct the infrared data port toward an infrared-equipped home electric appliances during infrared communication.**
Don't It may cause accidents due to faulty operation of infrared device.

 **Do not lighten the light near eyes. Especially, when you capture babies or infants, keep the terminal 1m or more away from babies and infants.**
Don't Vision disability may result.
Accident may result from being dazzled or shocked.

 **Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into docomo mini UIM card or microSD card slot.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.

 **Do not turn on the light and face the device to drivers.**
Don't May disturb driving and cause accident.



Do

Turn the terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.

Failure to do so may cause electronic equipment or electronic medical equipment to fail or malfunction. When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you will be punished according to law.

However, if the terminal use is permitted by setting for disconnecting radio wave, etc., follow airline instructions for proper use.



Do

When you talk by setting handsfree or ring alert is sounding, keep the terminal away from your ear.

And, when connecting the earphone/microphone, etc. to the terminal and play a game or music, etc. adjust the volume moderately.

Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss. And, if you cannot hear the sound around you clearly, it may cause an accident.



Do

If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.

May cause harmful effect on heart.



Do

When you use electronic medical equipment, check with the equipment manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by radio waves before using.

May cause harmful effect on electronic medical equipment etc.



Do

Turn the terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.

Failure to do so may cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control equipment. Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.



Do

When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of broken glass or exposed internal parts of the terminal.

Inside of display is made of impact-resistant resin and surface of camera lens is made of acrylic parts, and they are structured for the glass not to scatter, however, if you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may be injured.



CAUTION



Don't

Do not swing the terminal with holding antenna, strap, etc.

The terminal may hit you or others and may cause accident such as injury.



Don't

Do not use damaged terminal.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Don't

Before using the motion sensor, be sure to check safety around you, firmly grip your terminal and do not swing it more than necessary.

May cause injury or other accidents.



If the display part is accidentally broken and liquid crystal leaks out, do not make the material contact with your skin of face or hands.

May cause loss of sight or skin problems. If the material gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse it with clean water and go to a doctor immediately. And, if the material adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol etc. to wipe it off, and then wash with soap.



Do

To use the terminal in car, check with automobile manufacturer or dealer to determine how the device is affected by radio waves before using.

In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction. In that case, stop using the terminal immediately.



Do

Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor. For parts materials → P.31 "Material list"



Do

When watching the display, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.

May reduce visual acuity.

3. Handling battery pack

- Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

DANGER



Do not contact a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store the terminal with objects like a metal necklace.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



Check the orientation of battery pack to install it to the terminal, and do not try to force the battery pack onto the terminal if you are having trouble installing it.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



Do not throw the battery pack into the fire.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



Do not nail the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



If the battery pack's fluid etc. contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.

May cause loss of sight.

WARNING



If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to falling, never use it.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.

The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.



Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.

CAUTION



Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.

May cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.



Do not use or charge a wet battery pack.

May cause battery pack to ignite, burst, heat or leak.



If fluid leaks out from battery pack, do not make the fluid etc. contact with your skin or face or hands.

May cause loss of sight or skin problems. If the fluid etc. put into your eyes or mouth, or contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area with clean water. If the fluid put into the eyes or mouth, immediately see a doctor after flushing.

4. Handling adapter

WARNING

 **Do not use the adapter cord if it gets damaged.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

 **Do not use the AC adapter in a bathroom or other highly humid area.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

 **Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

 **When it starts to thunder, do not touch adapter.**
Don't May cause electric shock.

 **Do not short the charging jack while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging jack with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

 **Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



When you insert and remove AC adapter from power outlet, do not contact a metal strap or other metal objects with the jack.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do not apply excessive force to the terminal connected to the adapter to move or shake up, down or left, right.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Do not touch the adapter cord, charging jack or outlet with wet hands.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Only use with the specified power source and voltage. When charging the terminal overseas, use AC adapter for global use.

If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire, burns or electric shock.

AC adapter : AC100V

DC adapter : DC12V · 24V (specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use)



If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.



Do

Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, do not fail to properly connect to the outlet.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

When you disconnect the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the adapter to disconnect.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Do

When inserting/removing the adapter to/from the terminal, make sure not to put excessive force and insert/remove straight and horizontally.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Unplug

Always remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter when not using the adapter for an extended period.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Unplug

Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.

May cause fire, burns, electric shock.



Always remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket **when cleaning the equipment.**
May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

5. Handling docomo mini UIM card

CAUTION



Do

Be careful of the cut surface when removing docomo mini UIM card.
May cause injuries.

6. Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

WARNING



Do

Wearers of the electronic medical equipment such as implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use the terminal at least 15 cm away from the implanted device.

The terminal's signals may affect the operation of the electronic medical equipment.



Do

When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.

The terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



Do

When you are in a crowd etc. and you have difficulties to keep a distance of 15 cm or more from others, turn the airplane mode on or power off the terminal not to transmit signals.

There may be wearers of medical equipment such as implanted pacemakers or defibrillators around you. The terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



Do

When using the terminal in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility.

7. Material list

Part		Material	Surface treatment
Display panel		Hardened glass	AF coating
External case (Periphery)	Lateral face	PC	Gloss finish
	Lateral frame	PC	Gloss evaporation coating
	Back cover (Satin White)	PC	Gloss coating/ Hairline finish
	Back cover (Lapis Blue, Coral Pink)	PC	Multi-effect evaporation/ Gloss finish
Side key (Power/Screen lock key, Volume key) (Satin White)		Aluminum/ CNC processing	Hairline finish
Side key (Power/Screen lock key, Volume key) (Lapis Blue, Coral Pink)		Aluminum/ CNC processing	Anodized/ Hairline finish
Home key (Satin White)		Aluminum/ CNC processing	Gloss finish

Part		Material	Surface treatment
Home key (Lapis Blue, Coral Pink)		Aluminum/ CNC processing	Anodized/ Hairline finish
Camera lens Panel		Hardened glass	AF coating
Camera lens Periphery		Stainless steel	Chrome plating
1 Seg/Mobacas antenna top		PC	Gloss finish
1 Seg/Mobacas antenna body		Stainless steel	—
Light panel		PC	—
Speaker		Stainless steel	Polished/ Gloss finish
Infrared port		PC	—
Earpiece peripheral part		Stainless steel	Gloss finish
Battery Pack	Contacts	Copper alloy	Nickel base plating/ Gold plating
	Phone	PC	—
	Label	PET/ polyester film	Coating (UV matte organic PV)

8. Handling samples (Stereo Headset with Microphone)

DANGER



Do not use, store or leave the equipment in hot places (e.g. by the fire, near a heater, under a kotatsu, in direct sunlight, in a car in the hot sun). May cause fire, burns or injuries.



Do not put the equipment into heating cooking device such as microwave oven or high-pressure container. May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.



Do not let the equipment get wet with water, drinking water, urine of pet animals, etc. May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.

WARNING

 **Do not throw the equipment or give a strong force or hard shock to it.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.

 **Prevent conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the jack. Do not put those materials inside the equipment.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, injuries, electric shock.

 **Do not use Stereo Headset with Microphone while driving a car etc.**
Don't May cause accident.

 **During walking, do not raise the volume of Stereo Headset with Microphone to a level that ambient sound cannot be heard. Be careful about surrounding traffic or road surface condition.**
Don't May cause accident.

CAUTION

 **Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.**
Don't May cause fire, burns, electric shock.

 **Do not swing the terminal by the cord of Stereo Headset with Microphone.**
Don't May cause accident such as injury to yourself or others by hitting or removing the cord, malfunction or damage.

 **Take care with the volume when you use Stereo Headset with Microphone.**
Don't May cause hearing loss by long-time use or hurt of your ears by sudden loud sound.

 **Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.**
Do May cause injuries.

 **Store the equipment out of reach of small children.**
Do May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.

Handling precautions

General

■ Do not expose to water.

The terminal, battery pack, adapter, USB connection cable and docomo mini UIM card are not waterproof. Do not use them in a humid place such as bathroom or in the rain. If you carry your terminal on your body, perspiration may corrode the internal parts of the terminal and cause malfunction. Note that if a trouble is diagnosed as exposure to water or other liquid, repairs of the terminal may not be covered by the Warranty or it may not be possible to repair such phones. In that case, even if the terminal can be repaired, it is repaired at the owner's expense.

■ Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as used for cleaning eyeglasses).

- Rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth may scratch the display.
- Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, cleaning detergent, etc. to clean the terminal. These chemicals may erase the printing on the terminal or cause discoloration.

■ **Clean the jacks occasionally with a dry cotton swab.**

If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. When cleaning, be careful not to damage the terminals.

■ **Do not leave the terminal near the air conditioning vent.**

Extreme temperature changes may produce condensation and corrode the internal parts of the terminal, causing it to malfunction.

■ **Make sure to use the terminal or battery pack without excessive force.**

If you put the terminal in a bag full of items or sit down with the terminal in the pocket of your clothes, it may damage the display, and internal circuit board, and the battery pack and cause the terminal to malfunction.

Also, while the external device is connected to the external connection jack or the headphone connection jack, it may damage the connector and cause malfunction.

■ **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal.**

The display may get scratched and it may cause malfunction or damage.

■ **Make sure to see the user's manuals supplied with the optional accessories.**

Terminal precautions

- **Do not press display surface forcibly, or not operate with a sharp-pointed objects such as nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.**

Doing so may cause damage of display.

- **Do not use the terminal in extremely hot or cold places.**

Use the terminal within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.

- **The terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.**

- **Note down the information saved in your terminal in a separate note and keep it safely.**

Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data.

- **Do not drop or give a strong impact to the terminal.**

Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.

- **Do not plug the connector of the external device or the headphone connection jack into the external connection jack at the slant and pull it while connecting.**

Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.

- **The terminal could become warm while in use and charging. This condition is not abnormal. You can continue to use the terminal.**
- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**
Doing so may cause discoloring or burn-in of materials.
- **Do not use the terminal without the back cover.**
It may cause the battery pack to come off, or may cause a malfunction or damage.
- **While microSD card is being used, do not take the card out and do not turn off the terminal.**
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not let magnetic cards, etc. come close to the terminal.**
The magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
- **Do not bring strong magnetic objects close to the terminal.**
Bringing strong magnetism close may cause malfunction.
- **Do not decorate or paint the terminal.**
May cause malfunction.

Battery pack precautions

- **The battery pack is a consumable accessory.**

Replace the battery pack if the terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase the specified battery pack.

- **Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5°C to 35°C).**
- **The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the secular degradation of the battery pack.**
- **Depending on the use condition, the battery pack may be inflated as it comes to the end of its life. This is not a malfunction.**
- **Be careful especially about the following points when preserving the battery pack.**
 - Keeping under the state of the full charge (right after the charging ends)
 - Keeping under the state of empty charge (too exhausted to turn on the terminal)

The performance and life of the battery pack may deteriorate.
It is recommended that you store the battery pack with about 40% battery remained.

Adapter Precautions

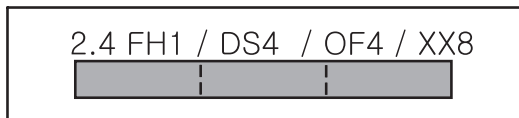
- Charge the battery pack in an environment with the proper ambient temperature (5°C to 35°C).
- Do not charge in the following places.
 - Places that is very humid, dusty or exposed to strong vibrations
 - Near ordinary phone or TV/radio
- The adapter could become warm while charging. This condition is not abnormal. You can continue charging the battery.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not give a strong impact to the adapter. Also, do not deform the charging jack.
Doing so may cause malfunction.

docomo mini UIM card precautions

- **Do not use excessive force to attach/remove docomo mini UIM card.**
- **Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a docomo mini UIM card with another IC card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep the IC portion clean when you use the card.**
- **Clean docomo mini UIM card with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).**
- **Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in docomo mini UIM card.**
Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data.
- **To preserve the environment, bring the old docomo mini UIM card to a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.**
- **Do not carelessly damage, contact, or short-circuit an IC.**
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop docomo mini UIM card or subject it to shocks.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend docomo mini UIM card or place heavy objects on it.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not attach docomo mini UIM card to the terminal with a label or sticker put on docomo mini UIM card.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.

Bluetooth function precautions

- To secure the Bluetooth communication security, the terminal supports the security function compliant with Bluetooth standards, but the security may not be sufficient depending on the settings. Be aware of the communication using the Bluetooth function.
- Note that DOCOMO is not responsible for data or information leak when making data communications using Bluetooth.
- Frequency band
The frequency band used by the terminal's Bluetooth function is indicated on the battery storage section. The following are the descriptions:



- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 2.4 | : This radio equipment uses the 2400 MHz band. |
| FH/DS/OF/XX | : Modulation scheme is FH-SS, DS-SS, OFDM or other system. |
| 1 | : The estimated interference distance is 10 m or less. |
| 4 | : The estimated interference distance is 40 m or less. |
| 8 | : The estimated interference distance is 80 m or less. |

 : The full band between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz is used and the band of the mobile identification device is unavoidable.

Available channels vary by the country.
For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand.

■ Bluetooth cautions

The operating frequency band of the terminal is used by industrial, scientific, consumer and medical equipment including microwave ovens, premises radio stations for identifying mobile units used in the manufacturing lines of plants (radio stations requiring a license), specified low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license) and amateur radio stations (hereinafter referred to as "another station").

1. Before using the terminal, confirm that "another station" is not being operated nearby.
2. In the event of the terminal causing harmful radio wave interference with "another station", promptly change the operating frequency or stop radio wave emission by turning off the power, etc.
3. If you have further questions, contact docomo Information Center provided on the last page of this manual.

Wireless LAN (WLAN) precautions

- Wireless LAN uses radio waves to enable communications between compatible devices, thus allowing connection to a local area network from anywhere within range. On the other hand, there is a risk of data interception by malicious third party unless security is established. It is recommended to set the security settings on your own responsibility.
- Wireless LAN
Do not use wireless LAN near magnetic devices such as electrical appliances or AV/OA devices, or in radio waves.
 - Magnetism or radio waves may increase noises or disable communications (especially when using a microwave oven).
 - When used near TV, radio, etc., reception interference may occur, or channels on the TV screen may be disturbed.
 - If there are multiple wireless LAN access points nearby and the same channel is used, search may not work correctly.
 - For using WLAN overseas, point of use etc. may be restricted depending on country. In that case, confirm conditions such as available frequency or regulations of the country to use it.

■ 2.4 GHz device cautions

The operating frequency band of the WLAN device is used by home electric appliances such as microwave oven, industrial, scientific, consumer and medical equipment including premises radio stations for identifying mobile units used in the manufacturing lines of plants (radio stations requiring a license), specified low power radio stations (radio stations requiring no license) and amateur radio stations (radio stations requiring a license).

1. Before using the device, confirm that premises radio stations for identifying mobile units, specified low power radio stations and amateur radio stations are not being operated nearby.
2. If the device causes harmful radio interference to premises radio stations for identifying mobile units, immediately change the frequency band or stop use, and contact "docomo Information Center" described on the last page of this manual for crosstalk avoidance, etc. (e.g. partition setup).
3. If the device causes radio interference to specified low power radio stations or amateur radio stations, contact "docomo Information Center" described on the last page of this manual.

■ 5 GHz device cautions

The terminal can use 3 frequency bands of 5.2 GHz band (W52), 5.3 GHz band (W53), 5.6 GHz band (W56).

- 5.2 GHz band (W52/36, 40, 44, 48 ch)
- 5.3 GHz band (W53/52, 56, 60, 64 ch)
- 5.6 GHz band (W56/100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136, 140 ch)

Using wireless LAN built-into the terminal in 5.2/5.3 GHz outside is prohibited by the Radio Law.

Precautions on FeliCa reader/writer function

- FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band.
When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep the terminal away sufficiently from them.
Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

Notes on samples (Stereo Headset with Microphone)

- **Do not expose to water.**

Stereo Headset with Microphone is not waterproof. Do not use in a bathroom or other highly humid area or do not let rain touch. Or putting the terminal on your body, humidity of sweat may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

- **Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab etc.**

If the jack is soiled, connection may get worse, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. Also, be careful never to damage the jack when cleaning it.

- **Do not place the equipment near an air-conditioner outlet.**

The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.

- **To remove Stereo Headset with Microphone from the terminal, be sure to hold the plug of Stereo Headset with Microphone and then pull out horizontally from the terminal.**

If you pull out forcibly, it may cause malfunction.

Note

- **Do not deform the terminal. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law/Telecommunications Business Act.**

A "Technical Compliance Mark " displayed on sticker of the terminal certifies that the terminal meets technical regulations for specified radio equipment that are based on the Radio Law/Telecommunications Business Act.

If you remove the screws and alter the inside of the terminal, the technical regulations compliance certification becomes invalid.

Do not use the terminal with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law and Telecommunications Business Act.

- **Be careful when using the terminal while driving.**

A penalty may be imposed for using by holding a mobile phone with the hand while driving.

However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.

■ **Use FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**

FeliCa reader/writer function of the terminal complies with the wireless standards in Japan.

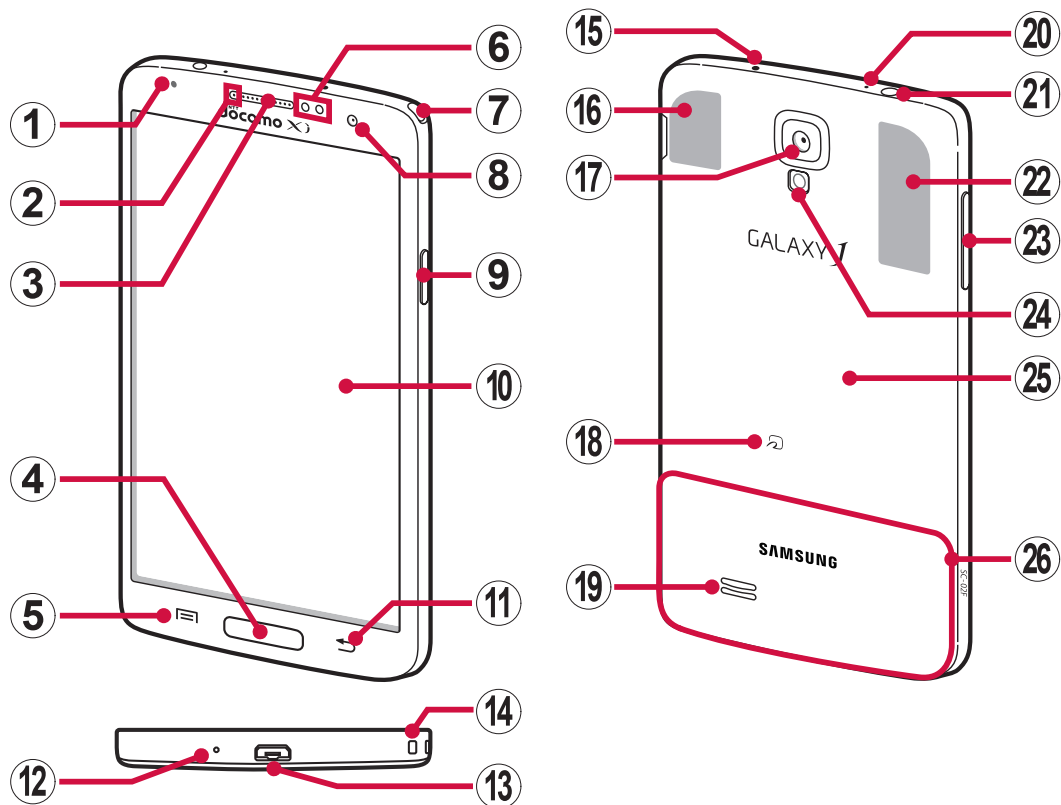
You may be punished if you use the function overseas.

■ **Do not modify the basic software illegally.**

It may be regarded as modifications and repair may be refused.

Getting started

Part names and functions



① **Notification LED** → P.101

② **Mouthpiece/Microphone (Front)**

- Works when talking with hands-free, for voice recognition while Hands-free mode is set and for voice recognition for S Voice, Memo application.

③ **Earpiece**

- Hear the other party's voice from here.

④ **Home key**

- Return to the Home screen during operation.
- Press and hold for 1 second or longer to display recently-used application list (P.138).

- ⑤  **Menu key**
 - Display menu.
- ⑥ **Proximity/Light/Gesture sensor**
 - Sense approach of face etc. or ambient brightness to turn off screen display, or sense movement of hand or finger (Gesture) to operate the terminal.
- ⑦ **1 Seg/Mobacas antenna**
- ⑧ **In-camera**
- ⑨  **Power/Screen lock key**
 - Press this key for 2 seconds or longer to turn on the power of the terminal (P.65).
 - You can set the screen lock manually (P.67).
 - Press and hold for 1 second or longer to power off, enable/disable data network mode, enable/disable airplane mode, restart, enable/disable emergency mode, and set Silent mode.
- ⑩ **Display (touch screen) → P.71**
- ⑪  **Back key**
 - Return to the previous status of key operation for Menu display, etc.
- ⑫ **Microphone/Temperature and humidity sensor**
 - Works when calling, recording with Voice Recorder (monaural/stereo), recording videos, and voice recognition.
- ⑬ **External connection jack**
- ⑭ **Strap hole**
- ⑮ **Infrared port**
- ⑯ **Wi-Fi/Bluetooth antenna*¹**
- ⑰ **Out-camera**
 - Shoot still images or video (P.315, P.316).
- ⑱  **mark**

- ①9 **Speaker*²**
 - Ringtone sounds.
 - When talking with hands-free, hear the other party's voice from here.
- ②0 **Microphone (upper side)**
 - Works when calling, calling with hands-free, recording with Voice Recorder (stereo), recording videos, for voice recognition while Hands-free mode is set and voice recognition for S Voice, Memo application.
- ②1 **Headphone connection jack**
 - 3.5 mm diameter connection jack for connecting Stereo Headset with microphone (sample), etc.
- ②2 **GPS antenna*¹**
- ②3 **Volume key → P.405**
- ②4 **Flash/Light**
 - Lights up when shooting image and video.
- ②5 **Back cover**
- ②6 **FOMA/Xi antenna*¹**

- *1 It is a built-in antenna. Covering around antenna may affect the quality.
- *2 Do not attach a strap etc. on the speaker section of the back cover. It may cause damage the back cover.

Information

- Transparent protective sheets are attached around the home key, lens of the out-camera, and on the lateral side of the terminal. Put them off if required.

docomo mini UIM card

docomo mini UIM card is an IC card storing user information such as phone numbers.

- Only docomo mini UIM card is available for the terminal. If you have a UIM or FOMA card, bring it to docomo Shop to replace.
- If docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, you cannot use functions such as calling, sending/receiving emails, data communication.
- In Japan, calls to emergency telephone numbers (110, 119, 118) cannot be made if docomo mini UIM card is not installed.
- docomo mini UIM is no longer usable in the unsupported terminals. In addition, if it is changed from DOCOMO UIM, some websites and data you have used may not become unavailable.
- For details on handling docomo mini UIM card, refer to the docomo mini UIM card manual.

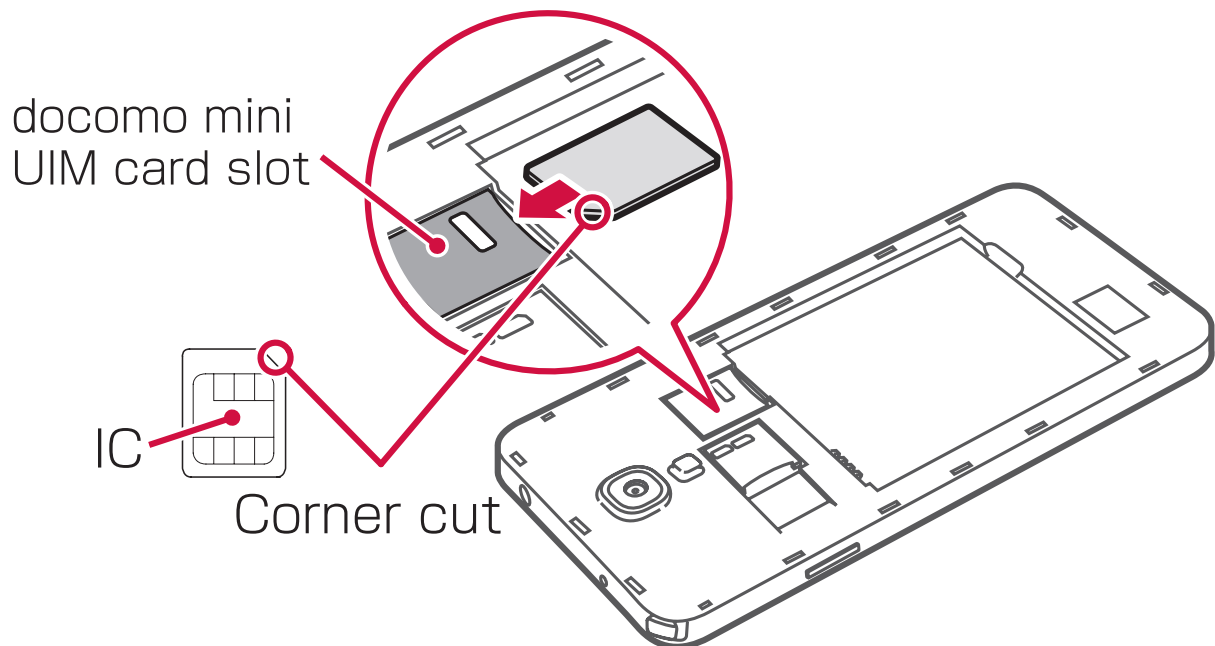
Security codes of docomo mini UIM card

The docomo mini UIM card has security code, named PIN code (P.453).

Attaching/Removing docomo mini UIM card

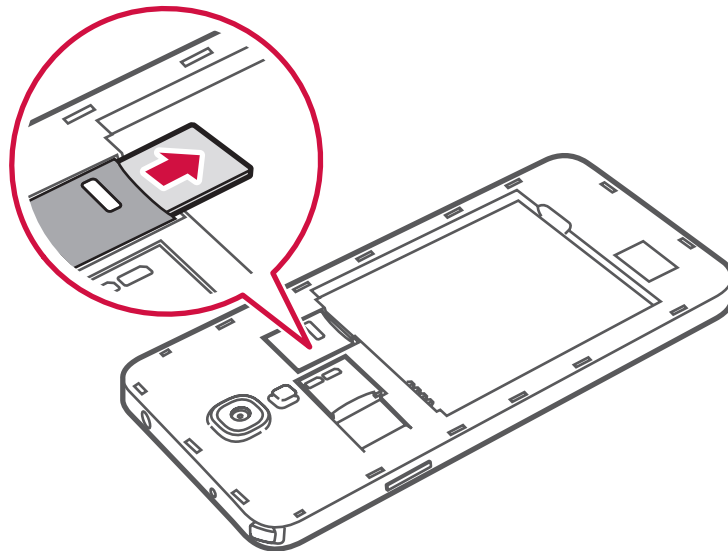
Attaching docomo mini UIM card

- 1** Remove the back cover (P.57)
- 2** Remove the battery pack (P.59)
- 3** With the IC face down, insert the docomo mini UIM card into the docomo mini UIM card slot in the direction of arrow mark
 - When you insert it in the correct direction, the docomo mini UIM card hits lightly to a guide inside of the docomo mini UIM card slot. Continue to insert to the end until it clicks.



Removing docomo mini UIM card

- 1** Remove the back cover (P.57)
- 2** Remove the battery pack (P.59)
- 3** Push the docomo mini UIM card attached to the terminal lightly
 - The docomo mini UIM card comes out a little.
- 4** Pull the docomo mini UIM card straight out in the direction of arrow mark



Information

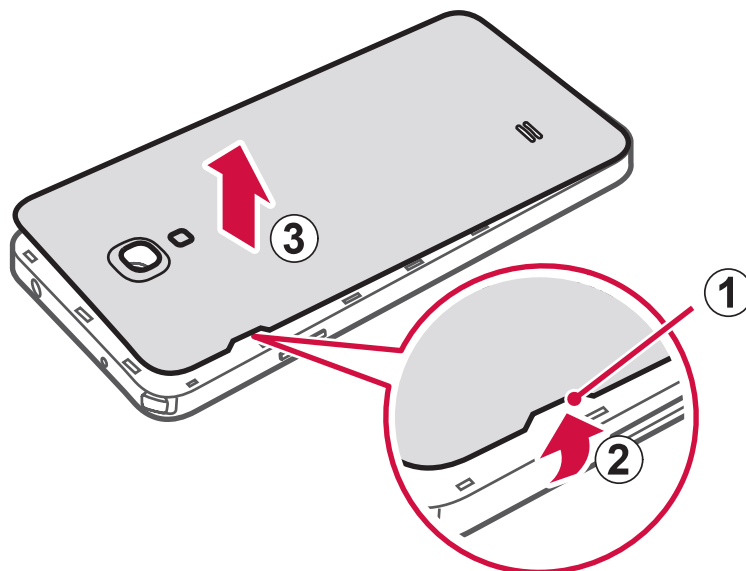
- For handling the docomo mini UIM card, take care not to touch or scratch the IC side.
- Attaching or removing forcibly may damage the docomo mini UIM card.
- Be careful not to lose the removed docomo mini UIM card.

Battery pack

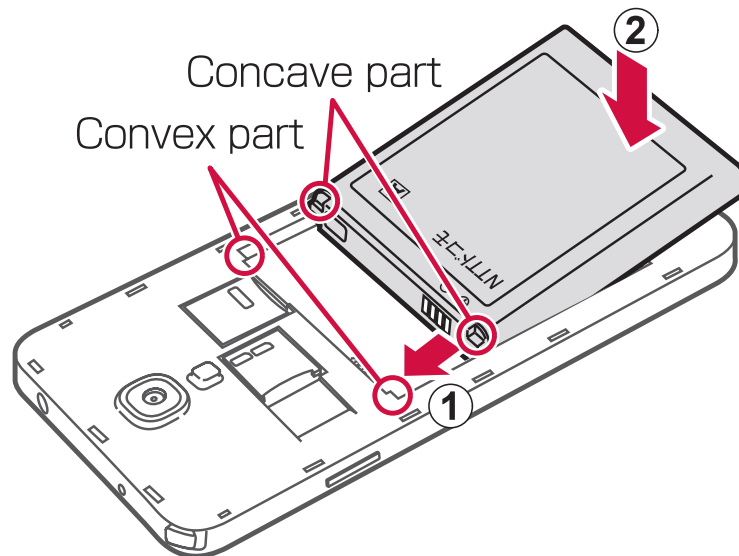
- Attach/remove the battery pack after turning the power off.
- For attaching/removing the battery pack or back cover, hold the terminal with hand not to damage the display, etc. And be careful not to press  with your finger or hand.
- Do not bend/twist with excessive force to attach/remove the back cover. The back cover may be damaged.
- Use Battery Pack SC11 for the terminal.

Attaching the battery pack

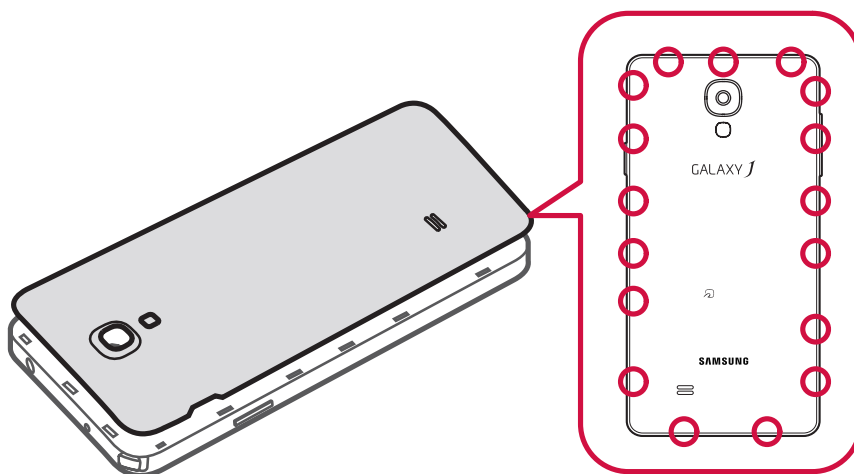
- 1** Hook ① of the back cover with your fingertip, lift up a little in the direction ② and remove in the direction ③



- 2** With facing the battery pack **A** mark up, align the tabs of the terminal with convex part of the battery pack correctly, press the battery pack to the direction ① and push to the direction ②



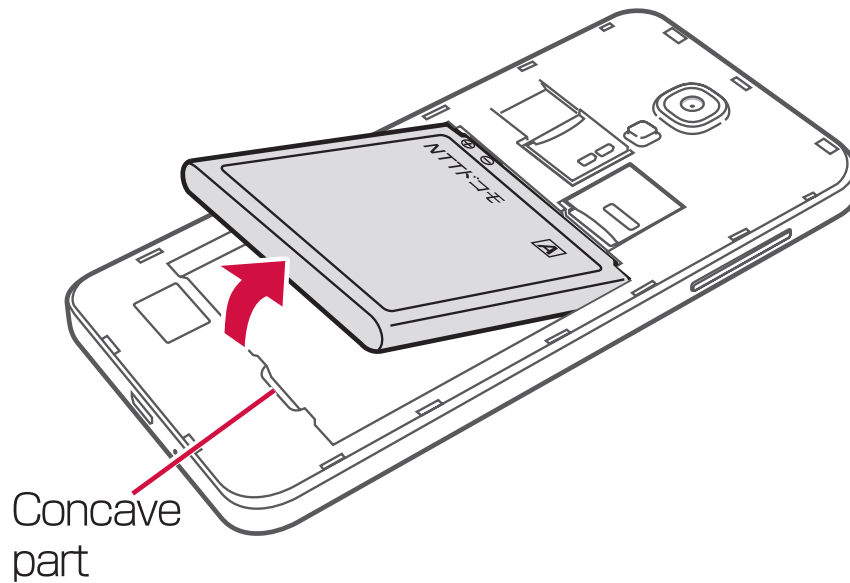
- 3** Check the orientation of the back cover, align the back cover with the terminal, and then attach the back cover pressing firmly so as not to make any gap



Press parts marked by ○ firmly and make sure that there are no gaps between the cover and terminal.

Removing the battery pack

- 1 Remove the back cover (P.57)
- 2 Hold the battery pack up in the direction of arrow mark using the groove of the terminal with your fingertip, and then remove it



Charging

■ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable accessory. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces.
- Watching 1 Seg, etc. while charging the battery for a long time may shorten the battery life.
- When a time available with each charging is reduced to about a half from that of a new battery, replacement of the battery is recommended because it is near the end of life. The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.



Li-ion00

■ Battery charge

- For details of AC Adapter 04 (optional), AC Adapter 03 (optional), DC Adapter 03 (optional), see respective manuals.
- AC Adapter 04 and AC Adapter 03 are applicable to AC 100-240V.

- The AC adaptor has a plug dedicated to AC 100V (for domestic use). When using the AC adapter in the range of AC 100V and 240V overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to the country you are staying is required. Do not charge the battery using a transformer for overseas travel.
- When the terminal is turned ON, you can operate the terminal even while charging. However, in that case, charging takes longer time because of reducing charging volume.
- When inserting/removing the connector, make sure not to put excessive force.
- Do not remove the battery pack while it is charged.

■ **Do not charge for a long while (several days) with the power turned on.**

- If the terminal is left for a long time with the power turned on while charging, the battery pack starts feeding the terminal when the charging is complete. For that reason, the actual battery time may shorten and battery alert may appear shortly. In such case, charge again in a proper way. When charging again, remove the terminal from the AC adapter or DC adapter and set again.

■ **Estimate battery pack operating time**

- The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the degradation level of the battery pack etc.

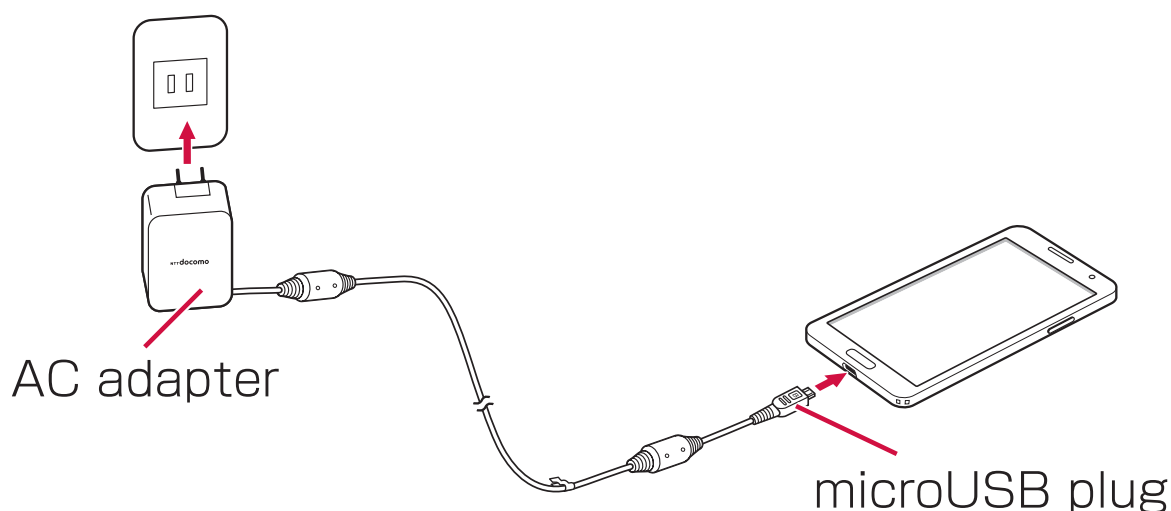
Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto): Approx. 390 H
	LTE	Stationary (Auto): Approx. 340 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto): Approx. 310 H
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 830 min.
	GSM	Approx. 690 min.

■ Estimate charging time

- For estimate of charging time, see "Main specifications" (P.543).

Charging with the AC adapter

Charging using AC Adapter O4 (optional) is explained here.



- 1 Insert the microUSB plug of AC adapter with facing B engraved up horizontally into the external connection jack of the terminal

2 Turn up and insert the power plug of AC adapter to the outlet

- When the screen is off, notification LED lights in red.
- When charging is completed,  appears on the status bar.

3 When charging is completed, pull out the power plug of AC adapter from the outlet

4 Pull out the microUSB plug of AC adapter from the terminal horizontally

Charging with USB cable SC02

You can charge the terminal with a PC by connecting to PC using USB cable SC02.

- For connection to a PC, see P.478.
- When you perform USB connection with a PC, "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの開始 (Start new hardware search wizard)" screen or "同期セットアップウィザード (synchronization setup wizard)" screen may appear on the PC. If you just want to charge the terminal without synchronizing to the PC, select "キャンセル (Cancel)".
- Depending on the terminal condition, it may take time for charging, or may not be charged.

When the battery is almost exhausted

Notification tone sounds, a message prompting to charge appears and the display dims. When the battery is exhausted, the power of the terminal automatically turns off. When you tap "Battery use" displayed with a message prompting to charge, functions presently consuming the battery power appear by a list. Depending on the function or application, a message indicating low battery may appear when you try to activate them and they may not be activated.

Turning power ON/OFF

Turning power ON

1 Press for 2 seconds or longer

- The starting screen appears, and then the lock screen appears.

When you turn the power on for the first time

Make the initial settings following to the onscreen instructions (P.98).

2 Tap

- When the Home screen is set to "TouchWiz Basic mode" or "TouchWiz Easy mode", swipe (P.72) the screen up, down, left or right until the screen lock is unlocked.

■ Checking the radio wave condition

An icon indicating radio wave reception level appears on the status bar (P.105).

When  appears, you are out of Xi/FOMA service area or in a place where the radio wave cannot reach.

Turning power OFF

- 1** Press  for 1 second or longer
 - Device options screen appears.
- 2** "Power off" → "OK"
 - After exit screen appears the power turns off.

Changing screen display to English

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "本体設定 (Settings)" → "コントロール (Controls)" tab → "言語と文字入力 (Language and input)" → "言語 (Language)" → "English"

Setting/Canceling screen lock

You can set the screen lock to prevent the erroneous operation of the touch screen or keys.

- When the display is turned off with "Screen timeout" (P.402) set, the screen lock activates automatically after about 5 seconds.

Setting screen lock

1 Press

- The display turns off and the screen lock is set.

Canceling screen lock

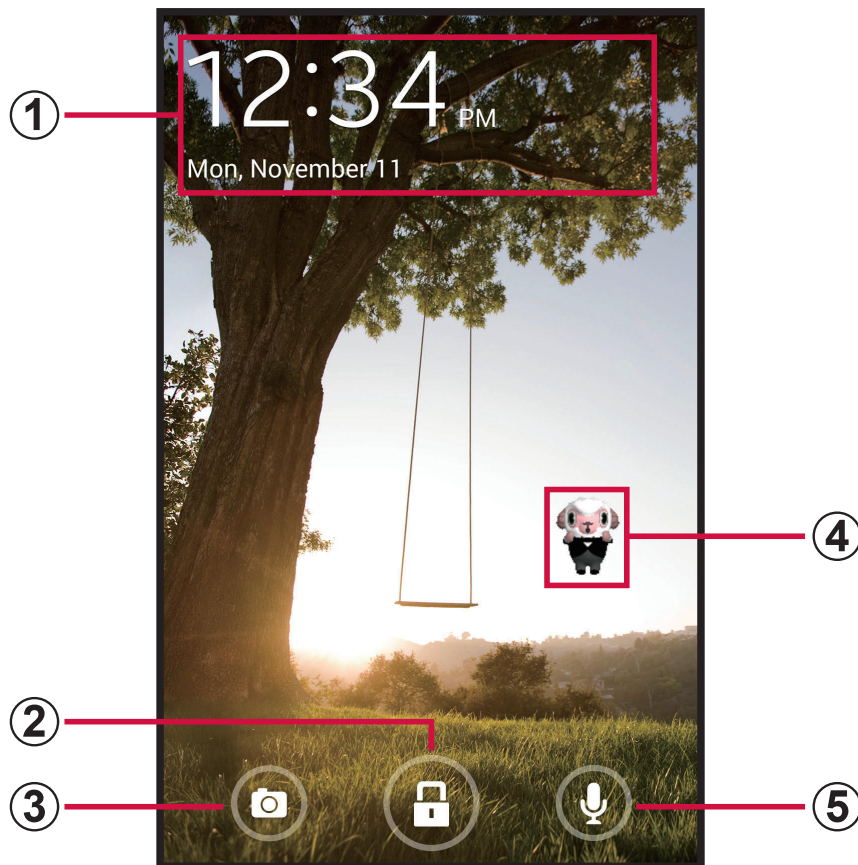
1 During the screen lock, press /

- Lock screen appears.

2 Tap

- When the Home screen is set to "TouchWiz Basic mode" or "TouchWiz Easy mode", swipe (P.72) the screen up, down, left or right until the screen lock is unlocked.

Lock screen



Lock screen (example)
“ひつじのしつじくん® (Butler Sheep)”
©NTT DOCOMO

- ① **Clock widget**
 - Flick the widget (located on the lock screen) downward to zoom in the widget.
 - ② **Lock canceling button***
 - ③ **Camera activating button***
 - ④ **Machi-chara* (e.g. ひつじのしつじくん (Butler Sheep))**
 - Notify you of information such as mail reception or incoming call.
 - ⑤ **Search button***
 - You can search activating "しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier)" or "Google" application.
- * Appears only when the Home screen is set to "docomo LIVE UX".

Information

- When notification information for missed calls or others arrives during the screen lock, the notification information may be displayed on the lock screen.
- You can set up that unlock method is required to cancel screen lock (P.417).

Managing widgets on the lock screen

Manage widgets to be displayed on the unlock screen. Swipe the widget left and right to show widgets to be activated from lock screen.

- You can use widgets when the Home screen is set to "docomo LIVE UX" or "TouchWiz Basic mode", and Screen lock is set to "Swipe/Touch".
- Enable "Multiple widgets" (P.410) beforehand.

■ Adding widget

- 1 On the lock screen, flick a widget right
- 2  → Select a widget

■ Deleting widget

- 1 On the lock screen, flick a widget right
- 2 Touch and hold a widget you want to delete → Flick to "Remove" at the top of the screen

■ Sorting widgets

- 1 On the lock screen, flick a widget right

2 Touch and hold a widget you want to move → Drag it to the position you want to move to and then release it

Information

- When you flick the widget on the lock screen left or right, or drag it down, press  to return to the lock screen. Swipe  up, down, left, or right to unlock screen.
- For widgets connecting to network, packet communication charge may be applied.

Basic Operation

You can operate the terminal variously with touch screen and motions.

- Do not contact the touch screen with electric materials or metallic materials. The terminal might not operate well due to static electricity.
- The touch screen might not operate when you use the terminal during charging. In that case, remove the terminal from the charger.
- Do not cover the antenna section with your hand when operating the terminal while holding it.

Using touch screen

■ Notes on using the touch screen

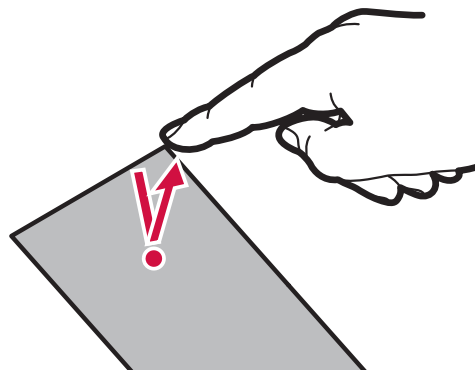
- Touch screen is designed for being touched lightly with fingers. Do not push it forcibly with a finger or press it with sharp objects (a nail, ballpoint pen, pin etc.).
- The touch screen may not work in the following cases. Note that it may cause malfunction.
 - Operation with gloved hands
 - Operation with tip of fingernail
 - Operation with a foreign object on the display
 - Operation with protective sheet or seal, etc. on the display

You can operate the touch screen (display) of the terminal by directly touching with your finger. In this manual, main operations are described as follows.

■ Tap/Double-tap

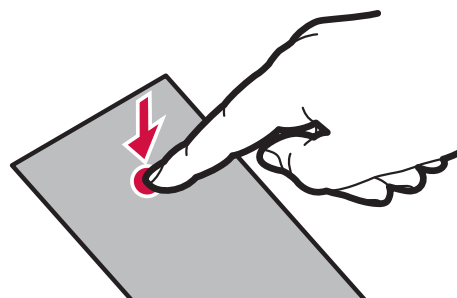
Touch a displayed item or icon lightly with your finger to select/perform (Tap).

Tap twice quickly on a displayed image or web page to zoom in/out the contents (Double-tap).



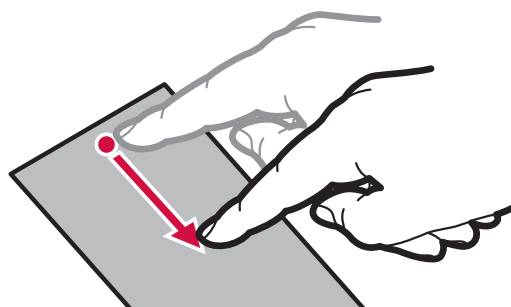
■ Touch and hold

Touch and hold a displayed content or item for 1 second or longer to display menu etc.



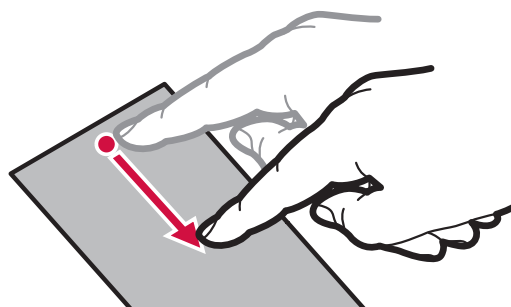
■ Drag

With pressing with your finger, move a displayed item or icon.



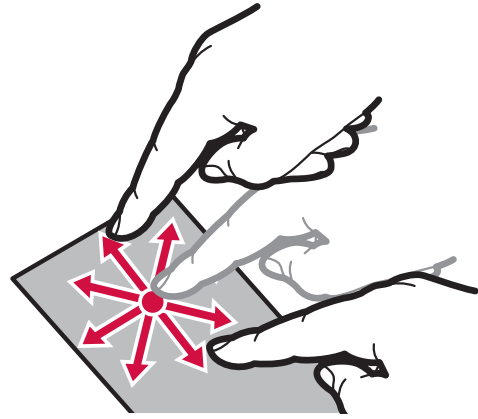
■ Swipe

Lightly move your finger across the surface of the screen.



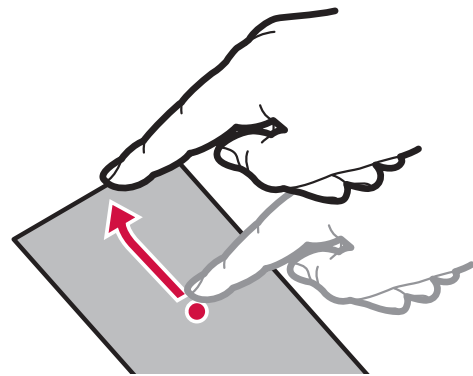
■ Scroll

With pressing a displayed content with your finger, move it up/down/right/left or switch the views.



■ Flick

With pressing a displayed content with your finger, move it quickly up/down/right/left and release it to scroll the content.



■ Widen/Narrow two fingers' distance

With pressing a displayed image or web page with your two fingers, widen or narrow the distance to zoom in/out the content.



Using Motion/Gesture

Use simple Motion to implement a variety of functions such as displaying information or muting ringtone and reproduced sound.

* This feature may not be available for applications provided by DOCOMO and some other applications.

Main Motion functions

Activate Motion before using. From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "S Gesture"/"Motions"/"Palm motion" → Tap  to enable the function and tap  of a motion/gesture you want to use to turn it ON.

- Tap a motion/gesture you want to use. You can display tutorial for each motion to check how to use or set an application or function to be used (Part of tutorial is required to be downloaded from "Samsung Apps").

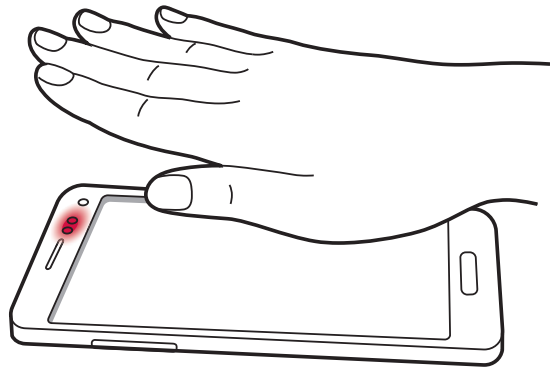
■ S Gesture

Moving your hand over the proximity/light/gesture sensor of the terminal (Gesture operations) performs the following operations without touching the screen.

- When usable application is activated,  / , etc. appears on the status bar.

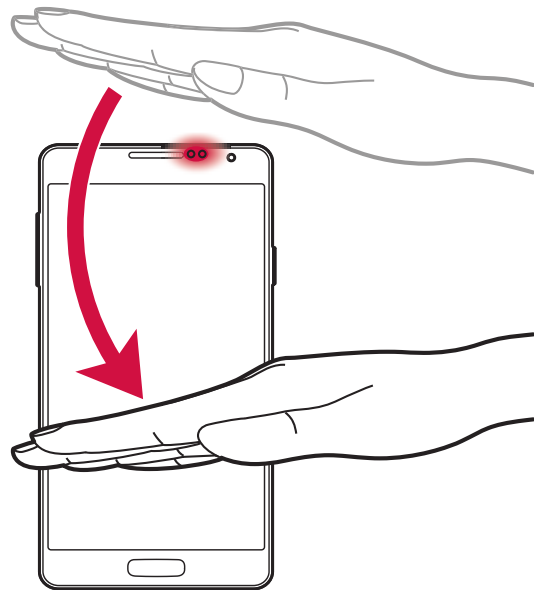
■ Quick glance

When the display is off, hold your hand over the sensor to display information such as missed calls, new SMS, date and time.



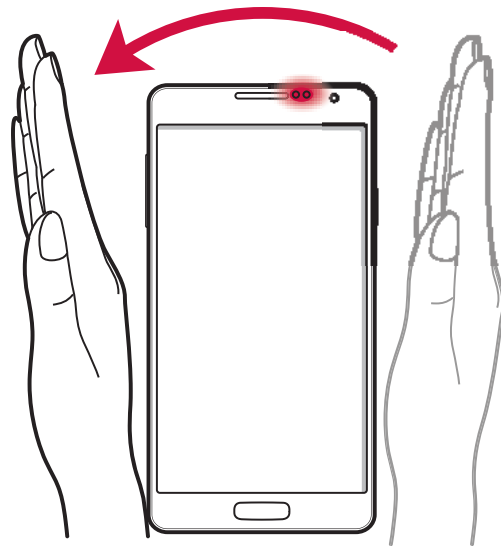
■ Jump

On the browser or email message screen, move your hand up and down over the sensor to scroll the screen.



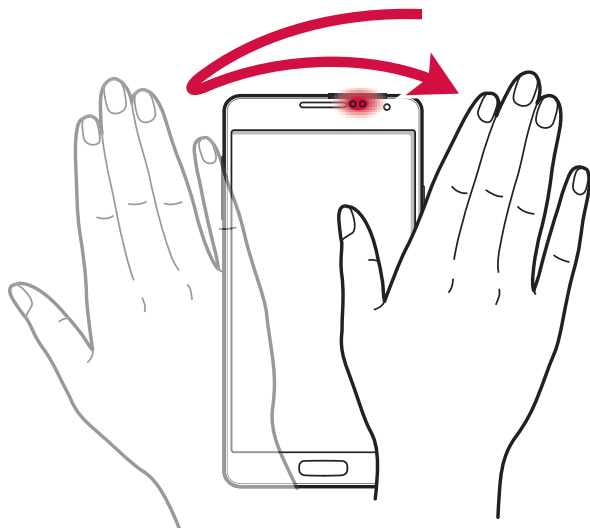
■ Browse

When still images or videos are being played on specified application, move your hand left or right over the sensor to go back to the previous data or go to the next one.



■ Call-accept

While receiving a call, wave your hand left and right to answer the call.



Information

- If you wear dark color glove or perform gesture operation out of the sensor recognition range, S Gesture may not function correctly because of sensor characteristic.

■ Motion

Moving the terminal performs the following operations without touching the screen or keypad.

■ Direct call

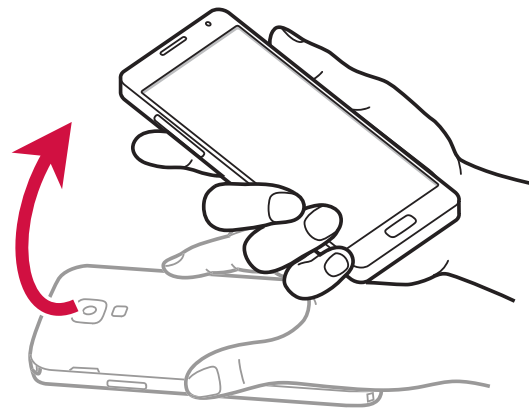
When SMS list screen or detailed screen of "Contacts" application provided by Samsung is displayed, pick up the terminal and bring it close to your face to call the contact.

* The international dial assist screen may appear when making a call.



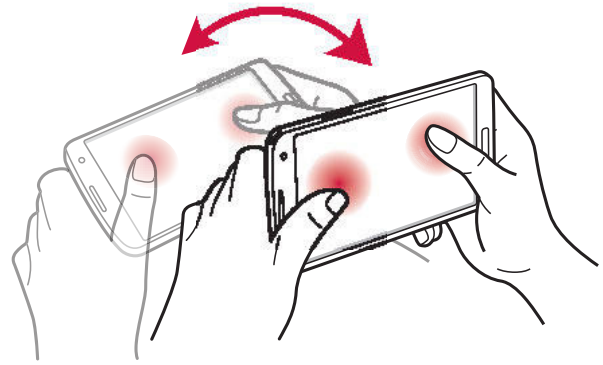
■ Smart alert

If you pick up the terminal when there are missed calls or new SMS and the screen turns off, the terminal vibrates to notify.



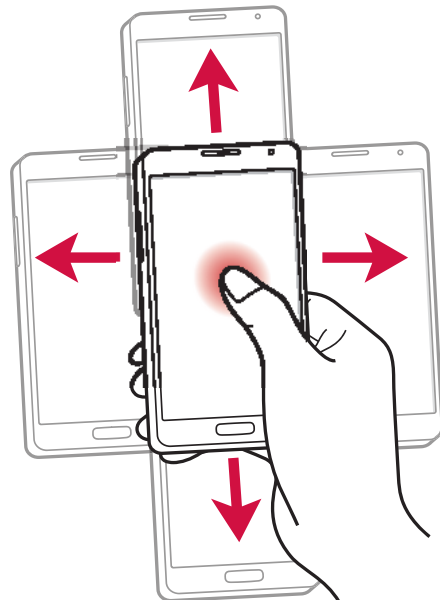
■ Zoom

When displaying image data or browser screen, tilt the terminal touching and holding 2 spots on the screen to zoom in, or zoom out screen.



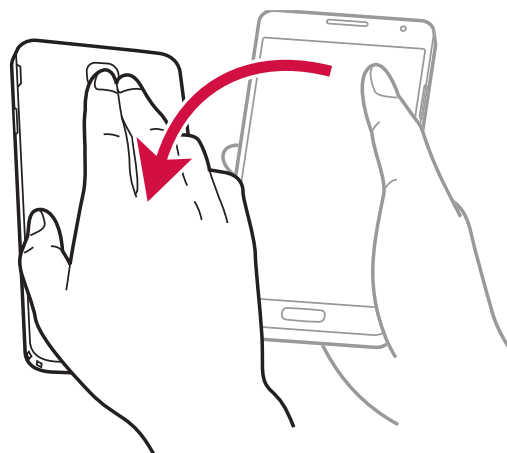
■ Browse an image

When an image is zoomed in, touch and hold the image and shake the terminal up/down/right/left to move in the image.



■ Mute/Pause

While phone ringtone, notification ringtone or alarm is sounding, or music/video is played, turn over the terminal to mute/pause (except when display is OFF).

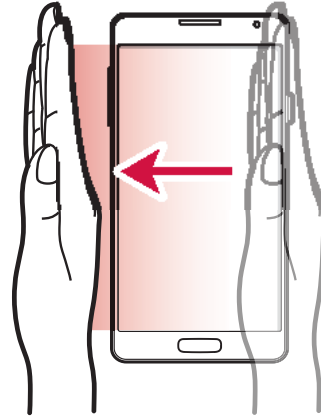


■ Palm motion

Moving your hand over the screen of the terminal performs the following operations.

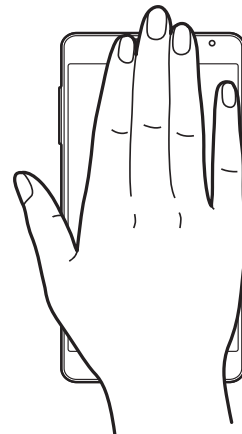
■ Capture screen

Swipe the screen from right to left or vice versa with the side of your hand to capture the displayed screen.



■ Mute/Pause

While ringtone or alarm is sounding, tap with your palm to mute. While playing music or video, tap with your palm to pause playback sound. (excluding when display is OFF).



Information

- If excessive movement (shakiness, impact, etc) is given to the terminal, Motion may not function correctly because of sensor characteristic.

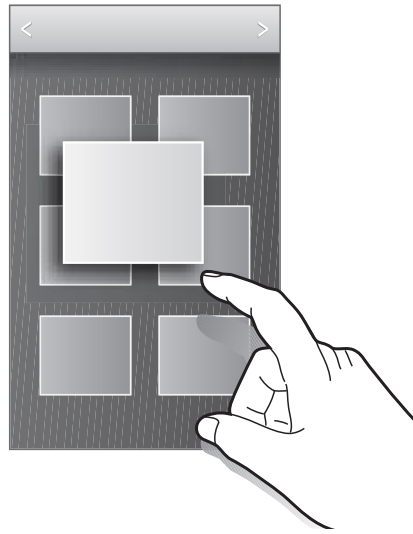
Using S Preview

Putting your finger close to the screen performs the following operations.

- In some applications, this feature may not be available.
- From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "S Preview" → Tap  to enable the feature and tap  of S Preview you want to use to activate it before using.
- From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "S Preview" → "Sound and haptic feedback" to set to activate sound and haptic feedback when the finger is put close to the S Preview screen.
- When S Preview is tapped, the tutorial for each S Preview appears and you can check how to use (Part of tutorial is required to be downloaded from "Samsung Apps").

■ Information preview/Progress preview/ Speed dial preview

Display information which is not displayed wholly on the screen in preview when you put your finger close to text or image, or display scene or frame time information when you put your finger close to the progress bar (current playback position) while playing video etc. Or, display name etc. set for speed dial (P.198) when you put your finger close to a number on the dial screen.



■ Webpage magnifier

While web page is displayed on the browser screen, putting your finger close to the screen magnifies the contents like magnifier.



Information

- Keep the distance between the finger and the terminal constant while operating by S Preview. If your finger and the terminal draw apart during operation, operating by S Preview is failed.
- While operating by S Preview, if the distance between your finger and the terminal, it may be recognized as touch operation.

Switching the orientation of the display automatically

Motion sensor which detects the terminal orientation (vertical/horizontal) and tilt can switch the screen view automatically.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Display"
- 2** Mark "Auto rotate screen"

Information

- You can also set Auto rotate screen on the Notification panel.
- Home screen or some functions may not automatically switch the view orientation.

Saving display content as image

Save screen content as image (screen capture).

- Screen capture may not be available for some applications.

1 Display a screen you want to save as an image

2 Press  and  at the same time for 1 second or longer

Information

- Captured images are saved in the png format, and you can check them from the Home screen,  → "Gallery" → Tap "Screenshots".
- Enable "Capture screen" (P.79) in Palm motion so that screen capture is available by swiping the screen of the terminal from right to left or vice versa with the side of your hand.
- Set whether to display edit screen right after capturing and edit the image.
→ P.403

Character entry

To enter characters, tap the character entry field to display the keyboard (Samsung Japanese keyboard) for character entry, and then tap a key of the keyboard.

Information

- Use Google voice typing or Moji-Henshu to enter characters by voice sound.
- Depending on usage condition, the display or operation of each keyboard may differ or the dedicated keyboard for the application or function you use may appear.

Switching keyboard types (input method)

- 1** While the keyboard is displayed, open the Notification panel
- 2** "Select input method"
 - "Select input method" screen appears.
- 3** Tap a input method you want to use

Entering with Samsung Japanese keyboard

In Samsung Japanese keyboard, you can use two types of keyboards: "3x4 Keyboard" and "QWERTY Keyboard".

- 3x4 Keyboard: it is a keyboard similar to a general mobile phone keyboard (for multi-tap method). Tap a key assigned character you want to enter several times until the target character is entered.
- QWERTY Keyboard: it is a keyboard similar to the one of PC. Enter Japanese in Roman character.



3X4 Keyboard



QWERTY Keyboard

- ① Display predictive options/usual conversion options. Tap an option to enter text.
 - When "Word Prediction" (P.95) is set to OFF, if is tapped while the predictive options is displayed, usual conversion options appear.
 - Tap to widen the display area of predictive options/usual conversion options. Tap to return the previous display.
- ② Switch an unconfirmed character to the one in reverse order of when you tap the key.
 - When no character is entered, perform displayed key operations.
Touch and hold to display the following icon menu. Displayed key differs depending on selected icon menu.
 - : Switch to voice input.
 - : Switch to the handwriting input.
 - : Display clipboard and paste text etc.
 - : Display Samsung Japanese keyboard setting menu.
 - : Display floating keyboard.
- ③ Moves cursor right or left.
 - Tap to continue inputting characters assigned to the same button in 3x4 Keyboard.
 - When "Wildcard Prediction" (P.95) is set to ON, wildcard prediction can be used (P.89) by tapping.

- ④ Alphanumeric/katakana conversion options appear. Tap again to display predictive options/usual conversion options.
 - When a character is not entered,  (Number/Pict/Emoticon/Symbol) appears.
- ⑤ Switch Hiragana/kanji/Alphabet input mode.
- ⑥ Delete characters or symbols to the left of the cursor.
- ⑦ Display usual conversion options.
 - If suggestions are not displayed, tap to enter a space.  is displayed only when entering Hiragana/kanji.
- ⑧ Confirm entered characters.
 - When  is displayed, tap it to insert a linefeed.
 - When  appears, tap to move the cursor to the next entry field.
 - When ,  appears, tap to search.
- ⑨ Put a voiced sound mark or the Japanese voiceless bilabial sound mark. Switch upper/lower case etc.
 - In alphabet input mode,  is displayed.
- ⑩ Perform displayed key operations.
 - Touch and hold to display the following icon menu. Displayed key differs depending on selected icon menu.
 -  : Switch to voice input.
 -  : Switch to the handwriting input.
 -  : Display clipboard and paste text etc.
 -  : Display Samsung Japanese keyboard setting menu.
 -  : Display floating keyboard.
 - While handwriting input mode is set or floating keyboard is displayed,  appears. Tap  to switch to QWERTY keyboard.

- ⑪ Display Number/Symbol/Pict/Emoticon list.
- Touch and hold the key to display Emoji/ Emoticon /Symbol list.
 - Tap the tab to switch lists of Pict/Emoticon etc.
Tap  to display the keypad.

Information

- For Moji-Henshu, connection by Mobile network is required. It may not be available via Wi-Fi connection.

Switching keyboard types

- 1 While the keyboard is displayed, 
- 2 "3x4 Keyboard ⇄ QWERTY Keyboard"
- 3 "3x4 Keyboard"/"QWERTY Keyboard" → "OK"

Information

- When "Custom Settings" is selected in Step 3, set screen orientation and keyboard type for each input language.

Switching Half-width/Full-width

- 1 While the keyboard is displayed, touch and hold 
- 2 "Half-width"/"Full-width"

Using Wildcard Prediction

Wildcard Prediction is a function to narrow down conversion options by entering numbers of the reading of word etc.

- It is available when "Word Prediction" (P.95) and "Wildcard Prediction" (P.95) are set to ON.

Example: Entering "東京都"

- 1 When the keyboard is displayed, enter "と" "う"

- 2 Tap  4 times

- "とう○○○○" is displayed in the entry field and "東京都" is displayed in the predictive conversion options.

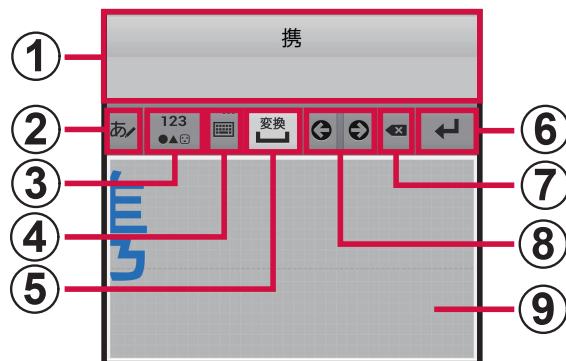
To change the numbers of reading

Tap  / .

- 3 "東京都"

Input by handwriting

On the Samsung Japanese keyboard, touch and hold , tap  to display handwriting input.



Handwriting input

- ① Display word suggestions. Tap an option to enter text.
- ② Switch Recognition mode (Hiragana/kanji/Alphabet).
- ③ Display Number/Symbol list.
 - Touch and hold to display Emoji/ Emoticon /Symbol list.
- ④ Switch to Samsung Japanese keyboard.
 - Touch and hold to display the following icon menu. Displayed key differs depending on selected icon menu.
 -  : Switch to voice input.
 -  : Display clipboard and paste text etc.
 -  : Display Samsung Japanese keyboard setting menu.
 -  : Switch to Samsung Japanese keyboard.
- ⑤ Display usual conversion options.
 - When any conversion options are not displayed, tap to enter a space.
- ⑥ Insert line feeds.

- ⑦ Delete characters or symbols to the left of the cursor.
 - When characters are entered in the entry area, you can delete the characters one by one.
- ⑧ Move the cursor left or right.
- ⑨ Enter characters in the entry area by handwriting.

Selecting/Copying/Cutting/ Pasting text

- 1** While the keyboard is displayed, touch and hold entered character string
 -  / ,  / , etc. appear. Drag  / ,  / , etc. to move the cursor.

2 Select icon to use

Icon	Description
 / 	Select all entered characters.
 / 	Cut out selected character string.
 / 	Copy the selected character string.
 / 	Paste copied/cut character string.
	Tap "Clipboard" to display clipboard.

Information

- In horizontal view display, the display may be different.
- For some applications, the function may not be available or there may be unavailable functions. And display of icon may be different or icon other than ones in Step 2 may be displayed.
- Touch and hold an entry field in which any characters are not entered to display a menu so that you can use "Paste" or "Clipboard" (For some applications, it may be unavailable).

Setting character entry/ conversion function

Setting Samsung Japanese keyboard

You can set entry operations when entering characters using Samsung Japanese keyboard, register to the user dictionary, etc.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "Language and input" →  on "Samsung Japanese keyboard"

2 Tap an item to set

Item	Description
SOFTWARE KEYBOARD	
Input Language	Select from Use system language, Japanese English, Korean English or Japanese Korean English.
3x4 Keyboard ⇔ QWERTY Keyboard	Switch keyboard types
Sound on Key Press	Set whether to enable entry sound when a key is tapped.
Vibrate on Key Press	Set whether to vibrate the terminal when a key is tapped.
Key Preview	Set whether to display entering character in popup when a key is tapped.
Key Size	Set keyboard height for each screen orientation.
One Hand Operation	Set whether to adjust position of keyboard for one hand operation.

Item	Description
SOFTWARE KEYBOARD	
Flick input/ Cursor control	In Flick Input, set whether to enter characters by flicking when keyboard is set to "3x4 Keypad". When "Normal Flick Japanese, English" or "8Flick Japanese(English:Normal Flick)" is set, the pop-up indicating available characters appears when you touch the key. Enter a character by flicking in the indicated direction ("8Flick Japanese(English:Normal Flick)" is available when input mode is Hiragana/kanji). Also, set for flick sensitivity or toggle input. In Cursor control, set whether to move the cursor by flicking on the keyboard.
Auto Capitalization	Set whether to sentence case automatically when alphabet is entered.
Auto Cursor Movement	Set speed of automatic cursor movement.
Voice Input	Select a voice input from "docomo Voice Input", "Google Voice Input", or "None".

Item	Description
SOFTWARE KEYBOARD	
Handwriting Input	Set whether to enter characters by handwriting or select display Prediction candidates/Recognition candidates. Also, set recognition time or thick/color of pen.
WORD SUGGESTION	
Learn Suggested Words	Set whether to save a phrase confirmed at conversion to the learning dictionary.
Word Prediction	Set whether to display conversion candidates when characters are entered.
Number Prediction*	Set whether to display conversion candidates when numbers are entered with number keyboard.
Typo Correction*	Set whether to display correction options in the conversion options field when there is a wrong entry.
Wildcard Prediction*	Set whether to use wildcard prediction (P.89).
Auto Spacing	Set whether to enter space automatically when you select prediction in alphabet/Korean character input mode.

Item	Description
WORD SUGGESTION	
Lines of Candidate Area	Set number of lines of candidate area.
EXTERNAL APPLICATION	
Mushroom	Set whether to use Mushroom plug-in.
DICTIONARY	
Japanese User Dictionary	Register/edit words etc. to Japanese user dictionary.
English User Dictionary	Register/edit words etc. to English user dictionary.
Korean User Dictionary	Register/edit words etc. to Korean user dictionary.
Clear Learning Dictionary	Delete all contents of learning dictionary.
ABOUT IME	
iWnn IME for Samsung	Check version of Samsung Japanese keyboard.

* It is unavailable when "Word Prediction" is set to OFF.

Setting Google voice typing

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "Language and input" →  on "Google voice typing"

2 Tap an item to set

Item	Description
Choose input languages	Select language to input with voice sound.
Block offensive words	Set whether to hide offensive texts recognized by voice input.
Offline speech recognition	Download for using voice input when offline.

Information of Moji-Henshu

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "Language and input" →  on "Moji-Henshu"

2 "アプリ情報 (Application information)"

- Check advanced information of Moji-Henshu.

Initial settings

When you turn the terminal ON for the first time after purchasing, follow the onscreen instructions to make settings for language, Samsung account, Google account settings, Google location information settings, and initial setting for docomo service.

Operation steps may vary depending on connection to network, omitting the setting, etc.

1 "日本語 (Japanese)" → "English" → "Next"

- To change the language, "English" → tap language you want to use.
- To change accessibility, tap "Accessibility" → Make Accessibility settings.

2 Set Wi-Fi → "Next"

3 Set Samsung account

- Tap "Skip" to set an account later.

When not connecting to the internet

Follow the onscreen instructions to set the Wi-Fi (P.383) then set a Samsung account.

4 "Yes"/"No" → Set a Google account

- Tap "Yes" if you have already had a Google account, otherwise, tap "No".
- When the setting screen for joining Google + appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

5 Set whether to restore or back up, to enable location information, and to receive updated information from Google Play using a Google account → 

6 Set whether to purchase applications etc. by Google Play

7 Set whether to permit to use Google location → "Next"

- When an entry screen for owner of the terminal, operate according to the onscreen instructions.

8 Check main functions and make settings if necessary → "Next"

9 On the Home selection screen, "docomo LIVE UX" → "Next"

- If you select "TouchWiz Basic mode" or "TouchWiz Easy mode", Home provided by Samsung is available.

10 "Finish"

- Continue to perform initial settings for docomo services.

11 "Next"

- A screen for installing applications collectively appears.
- Select "Install now" to install applications for service you have already subscribed. To stop installing them, select "Install later".

12 "Next"

- An initial setting screen for using Osaifu-Keitai appears.
- When you select "Set", tap "Next" and operate according to the onscreen instructions.

13 "Next"

- Setting screen for docomo apps password appears.
- If you select "Set", enter a docomo apps password.

14 "Next"

- A screen for the location information appears.
- Select "Location providing ON" to permit sending location information.
- Select "Location providing OFF" to reject sending location information.
- Select "Unknown blocking" not to send location information to the other party who is not saved in the phonebook.

15 "Next" → "OK"

Notification LED

In the state that the screen is off, when notifications for missed calls etc. exist or while charging, notification LED lights/blinks to notify about notifications or the condition of terminal.

Operations	Description
Lights red*	Charging battery
Lights green	Charging completes
Blinks red*	Battery level is low
Blinks blue* (Approx. 5-sec. interval)	Notifications such as missed calls, new mails, etc. exist
Blinks blue* (Approx. 1 sec. interval)	Recording
Lights blue and light blue in alternate shifts	Turning on to activate/ turning off to shut down

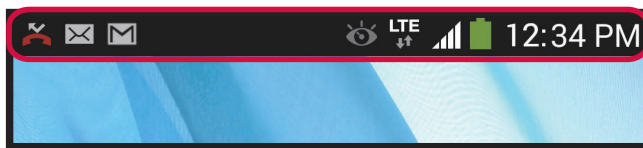
* Set whether to activate notification LED by "LED indicator" (P.409).

Information

- If a notification exists while charging, operation for a notification (blinking blue) is given priority.

Display and icons

In the status bar at the top of the display, icons which indicate the terminal status or notification information are displayed. Notification icons appear on the left side of status bar, and status icons appear on the right side of status bar.



Status bar

Main notification icons

- Some notification icons may be displayed with icons overlapped for indicating multiple notifications.

Notification icon	
	Receiving/calling
	Missed call exists
	New Gmail exists
	New Email exists
	New SMS exists
	Delivery report of SMS exists
	Trouble in delivery of SMS

Notification icon	
	New Area Mail exists
	Data downloading/download completed
	Data uploading/upload completed
	Messages in Voice Mail service exist
	Answering message On
	Recorded message in the answering message exists
	Alarm exists
	Alarm of Schedule, etc. exists
	Playing/pausing music in background
	Scanning microSD card
	Canceling microSD card mount
	USB connecting
	Error message exists
	Positioning current location by GPS function (center circle flashes)
	USB tethering enabled

Notification icon	
	Wi-Fi tethering enabled
	USB tethering and Wi-Fi tethering enabled
	No docomo mini UIM card
	Update of application installed from Samsung Apps exists
	Stereo headset connected
	Setting/checking software update
	Updatable application exists in dmarket
	Updatable applications exist in Google Play
	Google Play applications are installed
	Hidden notification information exists
	VPN connecting
	Image saved by screen capture exists
	Available Wi-Fi open network exists
	Keyboard is displayed

Notification icon	
	Available memory space of the terminal drops
	Watching/recording 1 Seg
	Receiving Mobacas
	Omakase lock is set
	Hands-free mode is set

Main status icons

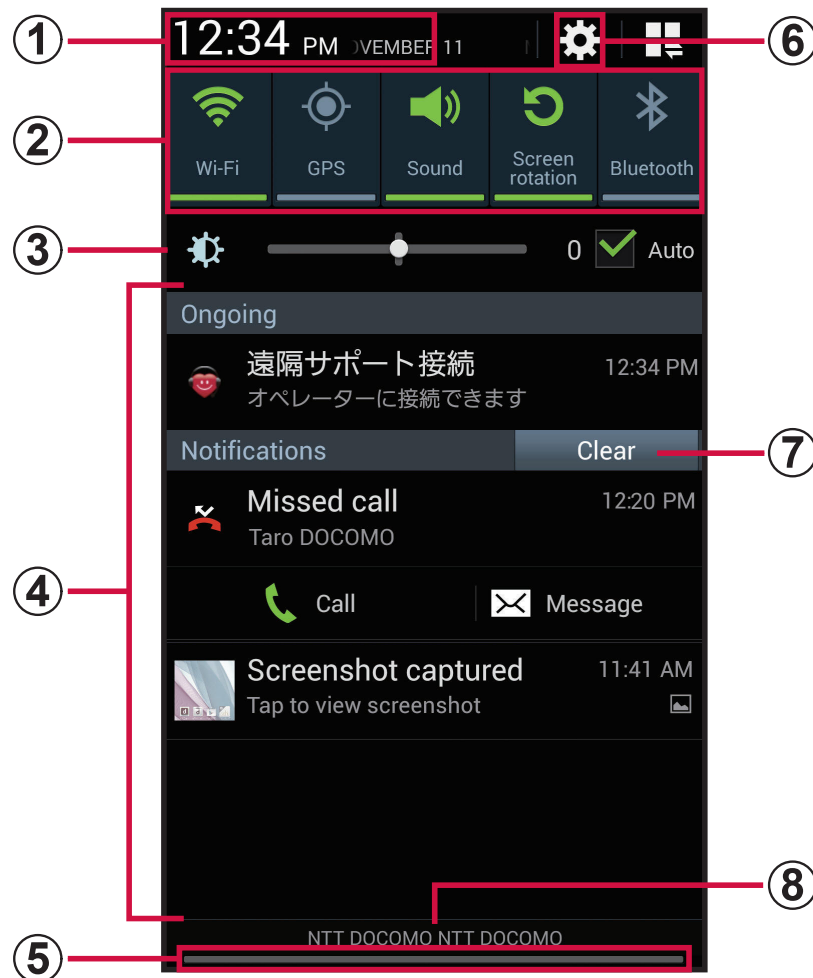
Status icon	
 (Weak ⇔ Strong)	Radio wave condition
 (Weak ⇔ Strong)	Radio wave condition (roaming)
	Out of service area
	Airplane mode is set
	LTE network available/communication in use (gray in standby, left arrow is orange while receiving, right arrow is green while sending)

Status icon	
 / 	3G network available/ communication in use (gray in standby, left arrow is orange while receiving, right arrow is green while sending)
 / 	FOMA high-speed/ HSDPA network available/ communication in use (gray in standby, left arrow is orange while receiving, right arrow is green while sending)
 / 	GPRS network available/ communication in use (gray in standby, left arrow is orange while receiving, right arrow is green while sending)
 / 	Wi-Fi network available/ communication in use (gray in standby, left arrow is orange while receiving, right arrow is green while sending)
	Bluetooth function enabled
	Connected to Bluetooth device
	In Silent mode (Vibrate)
	In Silent mode (Mute)
	Alarm set

Status icon	
	Hands-free call in use
 (Low ⇄ High)	Battery level
	Charging battery
	Wi-Fi Direct connected
	S Gesture available
	Turn Smart screen enabled
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set on the terminal and docomo mini UIM card
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set on the terminal or docomo mini UIM card
	Network restriction mode is set

Notification panel

Scroll the status bar downward to display the Notification panel. You can tap the icons to check the notification information or set function.



Contents on Notification panel (example)

- ① Tap to display the screen for Date and time setting (P.438).
- ② Switch ON/OFF for each function (Quick setting button). Scroll left and right or tap  at the upper right of the screen to display hidden icons. Touch and hold to display setting screen for each function.
 - Wi-Fi: → P.383
 - GPS: → P.339
 - Sound: → P.405
 - Screen rotation: → P.82

- Bluetooth: →P.472
 - Reading mode: →P.403
 - Mobile data: Switch ON/OFF for data communication.
If OFF is set, data communication by the mobile network is not available.
 - Blocking mode: →P.420
 - Power saving: →P.448
 - Multi window: →P.404
 - Screen Mirroring: →P.400
 - Wi-Fi hotspot: →P.389
 - S Preview: →P.80
 - S Gesture: →P.75
 - Hands-free mode: →P.424
 - Smart stay: →P.427
 - Smart pause: →P.427
 - Smart scroll: →P.428
 - Sync: →P.433
 - Airplane mode: →P.392
 - Network restriction mode: → P.393
- ③ Adjust the display brightness (P.407).
 - ④ Information in progress or notifications is displayed.
 - ⑤ Scroll upward to close the Notification panel.
 - ⑥ Tap to display the setting menu (P.379).
 - ⑦ Tap to delete notification information and notification icon on the status bar.
 - Some notification information may not be deleted.
 - ⑧ Display the connecting network operator name and operator name read from docomo mini UIM card.

Information

- Quick setting buttons are displayed in green when the functions are enabled.

Editing the Notification panel

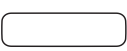
Change order of the quick setting buttons or show/hide items for adjusting display brightness.

- 1** On the Notification panel,  → 
- 2** Touch and hold a quick setting button → Drag to the position you want to move to and release it

To hide items for adjusting display brightness

Unmark "Brightness adjustment".

Home screen

"docomo LIVE UX", "TouchWiz Basic mode" or "TouchWiz Easy mode" can be set as the screen displayed by pressing  (Home screen).

- For information on "docomo LIVE UX", see P.142.

TouchWiz Basic mode



Contents on Home screen (example)
“ひつじのしつじくん® (Butler Sheep)”
©NTT DOCOMO

- ① **Multi window (P.113) handle**
 - Call up Multi window tray from any of screens. Tap this handle to display the Multi window tray.
 - Touch and hold  to display Multi window tray.
 - Touch and hold  again to hide the Multi window handle.
- ② **Shortcuts**
 - Activate application etc.
- ③ **Show which home screen you are in. You can toggle the home screens by scrolling/ flicking left and right.**
- ④ **These icons are displayed on any home screen.**
 - You can replace icons other than "Apps" with a shortcut, folder.
- ⑤ **Widget (Ex: weather information, search)**
 - Activate or operate widget (application located on the home screen).
- ⑥ **Machi-chara (e.g. ひつじのしつじくん (Butler Sheep))**
 - Notify you of information such as mail reception or incoming call.

Information

- On the Home screen, flick the screen up to activate "Magazine".

Displaying in Multi window

Drag an application from the Multi window tray to the position you want to display and drag another application, then use the applications at the same time.



Multi window

① Multi window tray

- Drag an application from the Multi window tray to a desired position.
- Applications which are shown with ➤ after being dragged can be used simultaneously in the both screens.

② Edit button for Multi window tray

- Tap "Create" to name and create paired window with current conditions.
- Tap "Edit" to add/delete icons displayed in the Multi window tray. Tap "Play Store" to display available application list of Multi window.
- Tap "Help" to confirm Help of Multi window.

③ Separator bar

- Drag handle in the center and adjust display range. Drag to the top and bottom (right and left for landscape view) edges of the screen to display in full screen.

④ End button*

- End Multi window.

⑤ Drag & drop button*

- Paste text etc. to the application in other window by dragging & dropping.
- In some applications, this feature may not be available.

⑥ Window-switch button*

- Switch upper and lower (left and right for landscape view) windows.

⑦ History button*

- History displayed in Multi window is shown in thumbnail view.

* Appears when the center handle of the separator bar is tapped.

Information

- Set to automatically display images etc. in the Multi window when you open a file attached to email or an image in My Files.
→ P.407

Adding shortcuts or widgets

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which shortcuts or widgets are not displayed

2 "Apps and widgets" →
"Apps" tab/"Widgets" tab/📌 tab

- 3 Touch and hold an item you want to add to the Home screen → Drag to the position you want to move to and release it

Adding folders

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which shortcuts or widgets are not displayed
- 2 "Folder" → Enter name of the folder → "OK"

Changing wallpaper

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold the wallpaper in which shortcuts or widgets are not displayed → "Set wallpaper"
- 2 "Home screen"/"Lock screen"/"Home and lock screens"
- 3 "Gallery"/"Live wallpapers"/"Wallpapers"/"Travel wallpaper" → Select a wallpaper
 - For Gallery, select an image and tap "Done". If you need to resize, drag the blue frame to resize and tap "Done".
 - For Live wallpapers or Wallpapers, select a wallpaper and tap "Set wallpaper".

Information

- To delete a shortcut, widget, folder, etc., touch and hold a shortcut, widget or folder → Drag it to "Remove" at the top of the screen and then release it.
- For widgets connecting to network, packet communication charge may be applied.

TouchWiz Easy mode



Contents on Home screen (example)
“ひつじのしつじくん[®] (Butler Sheep)”
©NTT DOCOMO

- ① Clock
- ② Weather information

- ③ **Shortcuts**
 - Shortcut applications shown on the Home screen are fixed.
- ④ **Show which home screen you are in. You can toggle the home screens by scrolling/flicking left and right.**
 - Scroll/flick left to display application shortcut list or scroll/flick right to display contacts list.
- ⑤ **Machi-chara (e.g. ひつじのしつじくん (Butler Sheep))**
 - Notify you of information such as mail reception or incoming call.
- ⑥ **Calendar**

Adding contacts shortcuts

- 1** In the contacts shortcut list, "Add"
- 2** "Create contact"/"Add existing contact"
 - Tap "Create contact" to display a saving location selection screen. Select an account and save a contact, a shortcut is added.
 - Tap "Add existing contact" to display contacts list screen. Select a contact to add a shortcut.

Adding application shortcuts

- 1** In the application shortcut list, "Add"
- 2** Tap an application to add

Deleting shortcuts

- 1** In the contacts shortcut list/application list,  → "Edit"
- 2** Tap a shortcut you want to delete → "OK" → "Done"

Apps screen

Apps screen when the Home screen is set to "TouchWiz Basic mode" is described.

- 1 From the Home screen, "Apps"
 - Apps screen appears.



Contents on Apps screen (example)
“ひつじのしつじくん[®] (Butler Sheep)”
©NTT DOCOMO

- ① "Apps" tab/"Widgets" tab
 - Display Apps/Widgets list screen.
- ② Applications
- ③ Show which Apps screen you are in. You can toggle the Apps screens by scrolling/flicking left and right.

- ④  **tab**
 - Show downloaded applications list.
- ⑤ **Machi-chara (e.g. ひつじのしつじくん (Butler Sheep))**
 - Notify you of information such as mail reception or incoming call.

Application list

Some applications require subscriptions (charged) to use.

Icon	Application	Description
	Dial	Make/receive calls using the terminal's "Dial" application provided by Samsung.
	Contacts	Manage contacts using the terminal's "Contacts" application provided by Samsung.
	Messages	Send/receive SMS.
	S Note	Create memos out of input text and handwriting.
	Gallery	View/organize still images/videos.
	Camera	Shoot still images/videos.
	Music	Play music.

Icon	Application	Description
	Video	Play videos.
	Clock	Use Alarm, World Clock, Stopwatch, or Timer.
	S Planner	Manage schedule.
	Email	Set Email account to send/receive emails.
	MobileTV	Watch etc. 1 Seg.
	ChatON	Enjoy group chat with this application.
	Play Store	Download applications from Google Play.
	Maps	Check current location or search a destination with Google Maps.
	YouTube	Play/post videos.
	Calculator	Calculate.
	Samsung Hub	Download videos, books, games, etc.
	Samsung Apps	Download applications or update installed applications.
	Settings	Make the terminal settings.

□ Samsung

Icon	Application	Description
	Internet	Web browser application.
	Voice Recorder	Record voice sound.
	POLARIS Office 5	View/edit/create Office document.
	My Files	View/manage data such as still images, videos, music, etc.
	Story Album	Create album and organize images.
	S Health	Improve health-care using body scale and blood-pressure monitor.
	Group Play	Share images or music via Wi-Fi.
	Samsung Link	Share contents of the terminal with the other device to play them.
	WatchON	Register an infrared remote control of the other device. You can operate the device using the terminal.
	S Voice	Search by voice sound.
	Downloads	Check downloaded or downloading data information.

□ Google

Icon	Application	Description
	Google	Search various information by the quick search box.
	Voice Search	Search by voice sound.
	Gmail	Send/receive emails via Gmail.
	Google+	Google SNS is available.
	Messenger	Invite multiple friend groups to one simple group chat to enjoy with all members on one page.
	Play Movies & TV	Purchase videos from Google Play.
	Play Books	Purchase books from Google Play.
	Play Games	Purchase games from Google Play.
	Hangouts	Chat using Google Hangouts.
	Chrome	Web browser application by Google.
	Google Settings	Make settings for Google applications.

□ Galaxy plus

Icon	Application	Description
	Flipboard	Display blog or news.
	Dropbox	Upload photos, videos, documents to cloud and manage/view them.
	Evernote	Synchronize with photos, videos, documents uploaded to cloud and manage/view them.
	TripAdvisor	View hotels, restaurants, tourist information, etc.
	Dictionary	Search a word etc. using the dictionary.

Icon	Application	Description
	Instruction Manual	The instruction manual for the terminal. You can activate desired functions from instructions.
	Phone	Use phone (P.162).
	docomo phonebook	Use phonebook (P.195).

Icon	Application	Description
	dmarket	Activate dmarket. On dmarket, you can purchase contents such as music, videos, e-books, etc. Provide information of applications on Google Play.
	dmenu	Application shortcut to access "dmenu". You can easily search useful contents for smart phones as well as contents familiar in i-mode.
	遠隔サポート (Remote support)	An application to use "Smartphone Anshin Remote Support". "Smartphone Anshin Remote Support" is a service with which a Call Center staff helps your operation checking your terminal's screens remotely.
	i コンシェル (i-concier)	An application to use i-concier. i-concier is a service for supporting your life like a butler or concierge.
	Memo	Create/manage memos. Support i-concier service.

Icon	Application	Description
	Schedule	Create/manage schedule. i-concier service is supported.
	i チャネル (i-channel)	Automatically obtain the latest information of 9 categories such as weather, news, entertainment, sports, fortune-telling.
	Disaster kit	Check received Early Warning "Area Mail" and the settings, save/view messages on Disaster Message Board.
	しゃべって コンシェル (Shabette concier)	Just speak "you want to search", "you want to do", etc. to the terminal. The apps read the meaning of the words to display most appropriate answer.

Icon	Application	Description
	ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)	Use this application for "ケータイデータお預かりサービス (Data Security service)", "電話帳バックアップ (Phonebook backup)" or "SDカードバックアップ (SD card back up)" service. You can back up or restore data such as phonebook entries. For ドコモバックアップ (microSDカードへ保存) (docomo back up (save to microSD card)), see P.362.
	IC Tag/ Barcode Reader	Read IC tags and barcodes.
	Osaifu-Keitai	It allows you to pay money only by holding the terminal over an IC card reader in stores etc.
	iDアプリ (iD app)	Make settings for use of electronic money, iD.
	ToruCa	Acquire, display, search, or refresh ToruCa.

Icon	Application	Description
	docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	Use this application for using docomo public wireless LAN service "docomo Wi-Fi" conveniently. Connect to Wi-Fi automatically in the Wi-Fi area. Also Wi-Fi areas can be searched.
	NOTTV	Watch Mobacas programs. Enjoy programs/contents of broadcasting station such as "NOTTV".
	Media Player	Play music or video.
	フォト コレクション (Photo Collection)	Use Photo Collection. Photo Collection is a free storage service for photos and videos.
	spモードメー ル (sp-mode mail)	Send/receive the mail using docomo mail address (@docomo.ne.jp). Pictogram and Deco-mail are available. Auto reception is also supported (P.210).

Icon	Application	Description
	Anshin Scan	Ensure your smartphone by checking virus, applications which require your personal data, by alerting when you attempt to access a non-secure website, etc.
	データ保管BOX (Data saving BOX)	An application for using データ保管BOX (Data saving BOX). Data saving BOX is a service which allows you to upload files to easily manage them in the cloud.
	sugotoku contents	Application shortcut to access "sugotoku contents". sugotoku contents offers selected basic/popular contents of various categories such as weather and news.
	Twitter	Official Twitter client application. Publish short message on the site to communicate with others.

Icon	Application	Description
	Hanashite Hon'yaku	Interactive translation application which converts words and sentences from a language to another. You can enjoy conversation with people who speak different languages.

Information

- These applications are preinstalled ones when you purchased the terminal. Some preinstalled applications can be uninstalled. Even if you uninstall such applications, downloading again may be available at "Play Store" (P.254) etc.
- When an application has notification information, number (number of notifications) may be displayed on the icon.
- When "TouchWiz Easy mode" is set as Home screen, tapping application shortcuts list screen or tapping "More apps" shows applications list.

Adding shortcuts to the Home screen

- 1 On the Apps screen, touch and hold an application to add to the Home screen
- 2 Drag to the position you want to add to and release it

Uninstalling/Disabling applications

- 1 On the Apps screen,  → "Uninstall/disable apps"
- 2 Tap an application you want to uninstall/disable
 - For applications you can uninstall/disable,  appears upper right of each icon.
- 3 "OK"

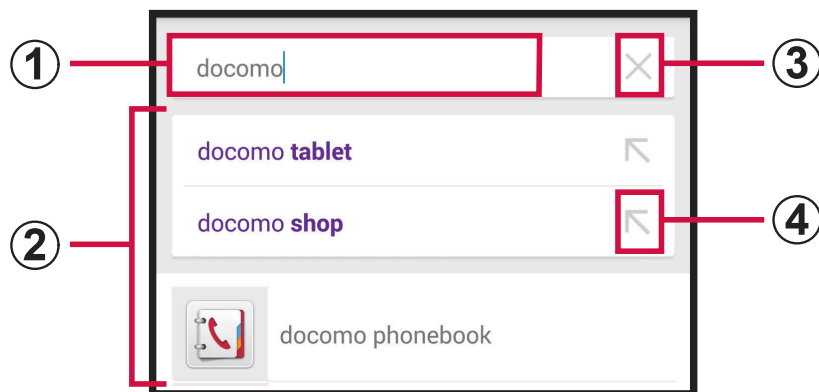
Information

- To enable disabled applications, on the Apps screen,  → "Show disabled apps" → Mark applications you want to enable → Tap "Done"

Using Quick search box

You can search information including entered word in the terminal or on the Internet.

- 1 From the Home screen, tap Quick search box



Quick search box

- ① An entered character appears.
- ② Information or search options saved in the terminal containing the entered characters appear.
- ③ Tap after text entry to delete all entered characters.
Tap  before entering character, you can enter words you want to search by voice sound (only for web search).
- ④ Tap to enter the searching candidate in ①.

Information

- Alternatively, press  for 1 second or longer →  → Select "Google" or from the Home screen,  → "Google" to activate Quick search.
- For voice input, connection via Mobile network is required.
It may not be available via Wi-Fi connection.

Google menu

Tap  on the Google screen to display following items.

Item	Description
Refresh* ¹	Refresh Google Now.
Sample cards* ²	Show sample cards.
Settings	
Google Now* ³	→ P.136
Notifications* ¹	Set whether to notify when new arrival information exists in Google Now card.
My stuff* ¹	Set an address of your home or office, or manage information registered manually such as sports or stock information, etc.

Item	Description
Settings	
Voice	
Language	Select language to input with voice sound.
Speech output	Set whether to always use speech output.
Block offensive words	Set whether to hide offensive texts recognized by voice input.
Offline speech recognition	Download application to use voice input offline.
Bluetooth headset	Set whether to enable voice input using Bluetooth headset.
Phone search	Specify target to search in the terminal.
Privacy & accounts	
Google Account	Set up an account required for Google Search, etc.
Google location settings	Set whether to permit access to location information.

Item	Description
Settings	
Privacy & accounts	
Web History* ³	Set whether to save web search history etc.
Manage Web History* ³	Manage web search history etc.
Search on google.com	Set whether to use local domain (www.google.co.jp) to search.
SafeSearch filters	Set adult filter for images and text.
Legal	Display Terms of Service, Privacy Policy, Legal Notices, Open source licenses.
Send feedback	Send feedback.
Help	Display operation guide for Google Search.

*1 Appears when Google Now is set.

*2 Appears when Google Search is activated for the first time.

*3 Appears when Google account is set.

Setting Google Now

Set whether to use Google Now. Use Google Now to show information of selected card is displayed on Quick search.

- To use Google Now, set a Google account (P.433).

1 From the Home screen, tap Quick search box →  → "Settings" → "Google Now"

- When "Discover Google Now!" screen appears, tap "Next" according to the onscreen instructions.

2 "Yes, I'm in." → "Show sample cards" → Tap "Settings" of item you want to set

3 Set conditions and notifications for displaying card

- Tap "ON"/"OFF" for each card to set to show/hide.

Searching by S Finder

Use S Finder to search within the terminal/
search Web.

1 Press for 1 second or longer

- S Finder activates.

2 Enter a keyword →

- Search results are displayed by category.
- To search Web, from "Search Web" category, tap an icon of search service to use.
- For details on S Finder, on the S Finder screen, tap  → "Help" to refer.

Recently-used applications

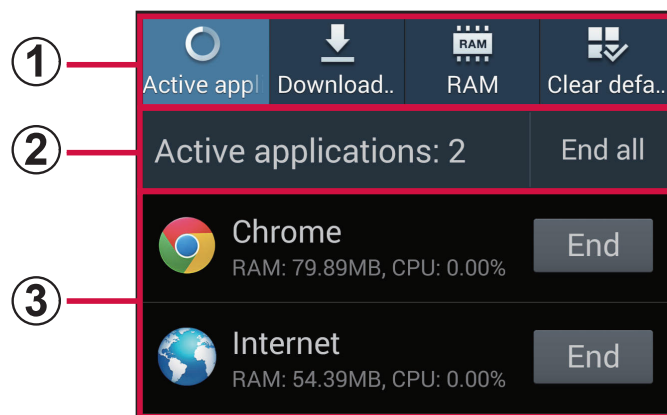
1 Press for 1 second or longer

- Tap a thumbnail of application to activate the application.
- Tap  to activate Task manager (P.138).
- Tap  to remove the list.
- Scroll/flick thumbnail left or right (up or down for landscape view) to delete it from the list.

Task manager

Check/end a running application.

1 Press for 1 second or longer →



Task manager screen

① Tab

"Active applications": Display a list of running applications.

"Downloaded": Check the installed application list and memory usage status. Tap to "Uninstall" → "OK" to uninstall the application.

"RAM": Check RAM usage state. Tap "Clear

memory" to erase the contents of RAM and part of running applications end.

"Clear defaults": Check screen settings for Home screen, browser screen, etc. in which default settings are stored. Tap "Clear" to initialize.

"Storage": Check usage state of each memory.

② **Number of running applications**

Tap "End all" → "OK" to end all running applications.

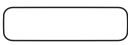
③ **List of running applications**

Tap "End" → "OK" to end the application. Due to usage rate of CPU, the text color of "End" changes. It becomes red if the usage rate is high.

Information

- On "Active applications" tab or "Downloaded" tab, tap  → "List by" to select display order of the list.
- When several applications are running, battery consumption may increase and usage time may shorten. Therefore, ending unused applications is recommended.

Switching home applications

Change the Home screen displayed by pressing .

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab

- When "TouchWiz Basic mode" is set, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → Tap "General" tab.

- When "TouchWiz Easy mode" is set, from the Home screen,  → Tap "Easy settings".

2 "Change home"

3 "docomo LIVE UX"/"TouchWiz Basic mode"/"TouchWiz Easy mode"

4 "OK"

Information

- When the home application is switched to "docomo LIVE UX" or "TouchWiz Basic mode", default wallpaper for the home application appears only for the first time. After that, the current set wallpaper takes over when it is switched.

Enabling Emergency mode

Enabling Emergency mode automatically changes the following settings to reduce battery consumption.

- Automatically convert the color of the display to grayscale
- Limit number of available applications
- Turn Data network off when the screen backlight turns off
- Turn off connection functions such as Wi-Fi, Bluetooth function, NFC/Osaifu-Keitai, GPS

1 Press  for 1 second or longer

- Device options screen appears.

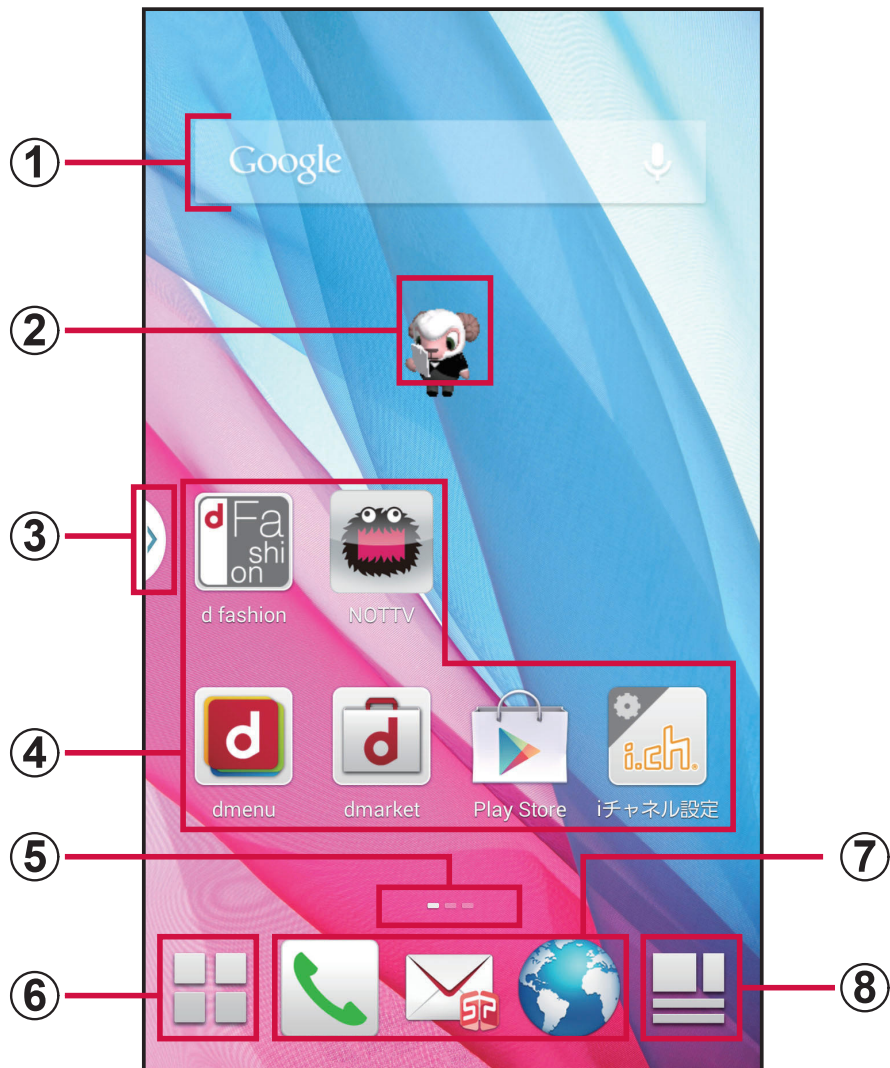
2 "Emergency mode" → Confirm the note → "OK"

- The color of the display is converted to grayscale and Emergency mode is enabled.

Information

- To disable Emergency mode,  → Tap "Disable Emergency mode" → "OK". Disabling Emergency mode reboots the terminal.
- To enable Wi-Fi, Bluetooth function in Emergency mode, tap  → "Settings" → .
- Enabling Emergency mode restricts part of functions such as TalkBack. In addition, available functions for applications may be limited.
- Using Camera, 1 Seg, and a browser consumes much power even in Emergency mode.
- Disabling Emergency mode may hide some widgets on the Home screen and may need to rearrange them.
- For details on Emergency mode,  → Refer to "About Emergency mode".

Home screen



Contents on Home screen (example)
“ひつじのしつじくん[®](Butler Sheep)”
©NTT DOCOMO

- ① **Widget (e.g. Search widget)**
 - Activate or operate widget.
- ② **Machi-chara (e.g. ひつじのしつじくん (Butler Sheep))**
 - Notify you of information such as mail reception or incoming call.
- ③ **Multi window (P.113) handle**
 - Call up Multi window tray from any of screens. Tap this handle to display the Multi window tray.
 - Touch and hold  to display Multi window tray.
 - Touch and hold  again to hide the Multi window handle.
- ④ **Applications and widgets**
 - Activate application, widget etc.
- ⑤ **The current position of the Home screen**
 - You can toggle the screens by scrolling/ flicking left and right.
- ⑥ **Application icon**
 - Displayed even when the home screen is switched.
- ⑦ **Applications**
 - Displayed even when the home screen is switched.
 - Shortcuts and folders can also be located.
- ⑧ **My Magazine**
 - Displayed even when the home screen is switched.
 - My Magazine is a retrieval service to show articles from genre you selected. It learns your preference by helping to set retrieval word from your reading history and profile information.
 - * The function will be available after provided update in the future.

Managing Home screen

Addable items on Home screen

Move applications and add shortcuts for widgets, folders, etc. on the Home screen,

Moving applications

- 1** From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed
- 2** "Show apps" → Touch and hold an application you want to move
- 3** Drag to the Home screen shown on the bottom of the screen and release it on the position you want to move to

Adding widgets

- 1** From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed
- 2** "Show widgets" → Touch and hold a widget you want to add
- 3** Drag to the Home screen shown on the bottom of the screen and release it at the position you want to add

Widgets	Description
Alarm	Set an alarm.
Google Play Books	Display books purchased in Google Play.
TheNewsCafe	Display latest news.
Samsung Apps	Download useful applications or update installed applications.
Bookmarks	Display Google Chrome bookmarks.
Phonebook	Allocate contacts to the Home screen to make calls or send mails.
Memo	Create a memo and paste it.
Schedule & Memo	Display Google calendar to check schedule or create memo.
Phonebook Select members	Display send/received call log etc. for the contact which is registered to "docomo phonebook" application provided by DOCOMO.
Clock (digital)	Display clock.
Dual Clock (digital)	
Favorite Contacts	Display selected Contacts. Make a call, send a mail, etc.

Widgets	Description
Flipboard	Display blogs and news.
Software update	Check/perform software update.
Gmail	Display the part of the Gmail Inbox.
Google Search	Display Quick search.
Weather Widget	Display weather information.
Music	Play music.
Google+ posts	Show content posted to Google+.
S Bookmarks	Select a bookmark saved in the terminal or Google account to browse the web page.
Walking mate	Count steps.
S Note	Create memos out of input text and handwriting.
Calendar	Display calendar.
Calendar	
Samsung Hub	Download videos, books, games, etc.
Active Apps Manager	Manage running applications.
Email	Display the part of the Email Inbox.

Widgets	Description
Picture Frame	Display images.
Messages	Create/send SMS.
Assistive light	Turn on light.
Change home	Switch home applications.
Video	Play saved/downloaded videos.
Google Search	Display Quick search.
Google Now	Display local weather information, traffic information from your location to destination etc.
YouTube	Display recommended videos.
docomo location information	Set service that uses location information.
Play Store	Display recommended applications.
Play-My Library	Display apps, books, movies purchased in Google Play.
Play Recommendations	Display contents information recommended by Google Play.
Contents Headline	Display recommended music, video, e-books, etc. in dmarket.

Widgets	Description
カテゴリナビ (Category navigation) (4x1)	Search by category such as gourmet, shopping, etc.
i チャンネルウィ ジェット (i-channel widget)	Display various information such as weather or news.
診断ツールアプ リ (Diagnosis tool)	Activate diagnosis tool application.
Twitter (large)	Display timeline of Twitter.
Twitter (small)	
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	docomo Wi-Fi area can be searched.
NOTTV ウィ ジェット (NOTTV widget)	Watch Mobacas programs. Enjoy programs/contents of broadcasting station such as "NOTTV".
Book	Purchase books from Google Play.
Bookmark	Select from bookmarks and go to the web page.
docomo phonebook	Allocate contacts to the Home screen to make calls or send mails.
Call directly	Allocate contacts to the Home screen to make calls.

Widgets	Description
Send message directly	Allocate contacts to the Home screen to send SMS.
Dropbox Folder	Upload photos, videos, documents to cloud and manage/view them.
Evernote Shortcut	Show shortcut for Evernote.
Directions	Search destination by Google Maps and check route to the destination by Google Maps Navigation.
Gmail label	Display emails in selected Gmail folder.
Contact	Display selected Contacts. Make a call, send a mail, etc.
Direct Message	Send SMS to selected Contacts.
カテゴリナビ (Category navigation) (1x1)	Search by category such as gourmet, shopping, etc.
Adapt Sound	Optimize quality of playback sound.

Information

- When "TouchWiz Basic mode" is set, available widgets are different. Also, icons of widgets may differ.
- For widgets connecting to network, packet communication charge may be applied.

Adding folders

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed → "Create folder"

Information

- To change folder name, tap the folder → Tap the folder name → Enter folder name → Tap "Done".

Moving applications, etc.

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold an application or widget, etc. you want to move
- 2 Drag to the position you want to move to and release it

Moving applications from Home screen to Apps screen

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold an application to return to Apps screen
- 2 Drag to "Back to apps list" and release it

Deleting widgets, etc. from Home screen

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a widget or shortcut you want to delete
- 2 Drag to "Remove from Home screen" and release it

Uninstalling applications/widgets

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold an application or widget you want to uninstall
- 2 Drag to "Uninstall" and release → "OK"
 - Uninstallation completion message appears.

Information

- For some applications which cannot be uninstalled, in Step 2, drag the application to "Disable app", then release your finger → Tap "Turn off" → "OK" to disable it (P.447).

Changing Kisekae

Set wallpaper or Apps screen at one time.

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed → "Change Kisekae"

- Kisekae setting screen appears.

2 Select an item → "Set"

Information

- Alternatively, from the Home screen,  → "Kisekae" to change.

Changing wallpaper

You can change Home screen wallpaper as you like.

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed → "Change wallpaper"

2 Select a wallpaper

- Tap "See more wallpaper" to select from "Gallery", "Live wallpapers" or "Wallpapers". If you select Gallery, select an image and tap "Done". To change the size, drag the blue frame to change the size and tap "Done".

For Live wallpapers or Wallpapers, select a wallpaper and tap "Set wallpaper".

3 "For all screens"/"Just for this screen" → "OK"

- Changing size is available for some wall papers. To change the size, "Adjust position"
→ Drag the blue frame to change the size → Tap "Done".

Adding home screens

1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed → "Home screens"

- You can display Home screen list by narrowing two fingers' distance on the Home screen.

2 Tap

- Add up to 7 pages.

Sorting home screens

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed → "Home screens"
 - You can display Home screen list by narrowing two fingers' distance on the Home screen.
- 2 Touch and hold a thumbnail of Home screen
- 3 Drag to the position you want to move to and release it

Deleting home screen

- 1 From the Home screen, touch and hold a wallpaper in which applications or widgets, etc. are not displayed → "Home screens"
 - You can display Home screen list by narrowing two fingers' distance on the Home screen.
- 2 Tap  of thumbnail of home screen you want to remove

Displaying Machi-chara

Set a character moving on the Home screen freely and speak "you want to search", "you want to do", etc. to the terminal. The apps read the meaning of the words to display most appropriate answer.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Machi-Chara display setting"
- 2** "マチキャラ表示 (Machi-Chara display)" tab → "表示する (Display)" in "キャラ表示 (Chara display)"

Information

- Alternatively, touch and hold displayed character to open the setting screen.
- Tap "基本設定 (General settings)" tab in Step 2 to set to hear the Machi-chara voice from the earpiece by turning the microphone to ON automatically when you place the terminal on the ear, or change theme or wallpaper in Shabette concier app.

Apps screen

1 From the Home screen,

- Apps screen appears.
- You can scroll/flick the Home screen down to display Apps screen.



Contents on Apps list screen (example)

① "Apps" tab/"Widgets" tab/"Wallpapers" tab/"Recommendations" button

- Display the application list/widget list/wallpapers list.
- Tapping "Recommendations button" shows applications recommended by DOCOMO.

② Applications

- The shown applications are not on Home screen. Select an icon to activate.
- You can toggle the screens by scrolling/flicking left and right.

③ Home screen

- You can toggle the screens by scrolling/flicking left and right.
- Scroll/flick up to display the Home screen.

④ Show which Apps screen you are in.

Managing applications

Moving applications to Home screen

- 1** On the Apps screen, touch and hold an application/widget you want to move to the Home screen
- 2** Drag to the Home screen shown on the bottom of the screen and release it

Uninstalling applications or widgets

- 1 On the Apps/Widgets screen screen, touch and hold an application/widget you want to uninstall
- 2 Drag to "Uninstall" and release → "OK"

Information

- For some applications which cannot be uninstalled, in Step 2, drag the application to "Disable app", then release your finger → Tap "Turn off" → "OK" to disable it (P.447).

Moving applications

- 1 On the application list screen, touch and hold an application you want to move
- 2 Drag to the position you want to move to and release it

Searching applications

- 1** On the Apps screen,  → "Search"
- 2** Enter application name you want to search → Tap a searched application
 - To search installed applications, on the search screen,  → "Settings" → "Phone search" → Mark "Apps".

Installing "Recommends" applications

Applications recommended by DOCOMO are displayed in the "Recommends button". To download applications, follow the onscreen instructions.

- A guidance page appears for the first activation. Tap "おすすめアプリを見る (See recommended apps)" to display application list.
- Tap "おすすめアプリをすべて見る (See all recommended apps)" to connect the Internet and display all recommended applications in a list.

Apps layout setting

Set location to place downloaded application.

- 1 On the Apps screen,  → "Apps layout setting"
- 2 "Home screen"/"Apps list" → "OK"

Home screen information

You can view the descriptions or instructions, etc. about docomo LIVE UX.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Help"

Version information

- 1 On the Apps screen, 
- 2 "About"
 - You can view the provider/version information of docomo LIVE UX.

Calling

Making a call

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Dial"
- 2 Enter a phone number of the other party
 - Enter a city code even when the other party is in the same city.



Dial screen

- ① **Recent calls:** Display call log screen (P.175).
Favorites: Contact list added to Favorites appears (P.201).
Dial: Dial screen appears.

- ② **Phone number entry field**
Entered phone number is displayed.
- ③ **Call key**
Call to an entered phone number.
- ④ **Key for registering to phonebook**
Register entered phone numbers to phonebook.
- ⑤ **Koe-no-Takuhaibin key**
Record voice message (P.182).
- ⑥ **Delete key**
Delete a number at the far right. To delete all numbers entered, touch and hold the key.
- ⑦ **Phonebook key**
Display the phonebook.

3 Tap 

4 When the call ends, "End call"

Information

- Video call is not available for the terminal.
- To show/hide the caller ID per call, enter prefix "186" (show) / "184" (hide) before the phone number. You can set to show/hide in "Caller ID notification" (P.183) in advance.
- Use "Add 2-sec pause" or "Add wait" to dial phone number and additional code in a row when sending an additional code during a call is required for bank balance inquiries, ticket reservation services, etc. → P.167
- Alternatively, from the Home screen,  → Tap "Dial" to activate application provided by Samsung and then tap "Keypad" to make a call. However, available functions etc. differ from those of "Phone" application provided by DOCOMO.

Emergency call

Emergency call	Phone number
Police	1 1 0
Fire and ambulance	1 1 9
Marine emergency	1 1 8

Information

- The terminal supports "Emergency report location notification". When calling to 1 1 0, 1 1 9, or 1 1 8, the information of where you are calling from is automatically informed to the police or other agencies. Due to the location where you call or the signal status, the location information may not be informed correctly. If the location information is informed, the agency's name is displayed on the Home screen. Also, if you call with "184" attached or other non-notification functions, the location information and telephone number will not be informed. However, if the agency consider it is necessary to know those information due to lifesaving, the agency may retrieve your information regardless of your current settings. Besides, the introduced region or period of "Emergency report location notification" varies from each agencies.

Information

- When calling to 110, 119 or 118 from the terminal, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and your current location precisely for checking callback from the police/fire department.
To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, do not move during the call and do not turn OFF the phone after the call, but keep it ON for about 10 minutes.
- For some areas you are calling from, you are not connected to the local police or fire department.
- In Japan, when docomo mini UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, the emergency numbers of 110, 119 or 118 are not available on the PIN code entry screen or during PIN code lock/PUK lock.
- If you make an emergency call with call rejection setting/Blocking mode is enabled, call rejection setting/Blocking mode will be disabled.

Menu of dial screen

Tap  on the dial screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Caller ID notification* ¹	Set whether to notify/not to notify the caller ID.
International call* ¹	Make an international call (P.180).
Add 2-sec pause* ¹	Enter " , ". Enter a phone number, pause " , " and numbers consecutively and call. The call is connected and the touch-tone signals are automatically sent after about 2 seconds.
Add wait* ¹	Enter a wait " ; ". Enter a phone number, wait " ; " and numbers consecutively and call. When the call is connected, tap "Yes" and the touch-tone signals are sent.
Send SMS	→ P.211
Call settings	→ P.182
Set start-up screen	Set the displayed screen as a default when tapping  on the Home screen.* ²

*1 Appears when entering a number on the dial screen.

*2 Depending on the Home application you are

using, the setting may not be effective.

Receiving a call

1 A call is received

- A reception screen appears.



Incoming call screen

- If call is received when you are at out of service area, incoming call notification arrives via SMS message.

2 Drag to outside of the circle

- A call starts.

To reject a call

Drag  to outside of the circle.

To reject a call and inform the caller of the reason of the rejection by SMS

Drag "Reject with answering/text message" at the bottom of the screen upward and tap  of reject message.

- Tap "Create new message" to create SMS.

To answer with "Recorded message"

Drag up "Reject with answering/text message" at the bottom of the screen and tap "Answering message".

3 When the call ends, "End call"

Information

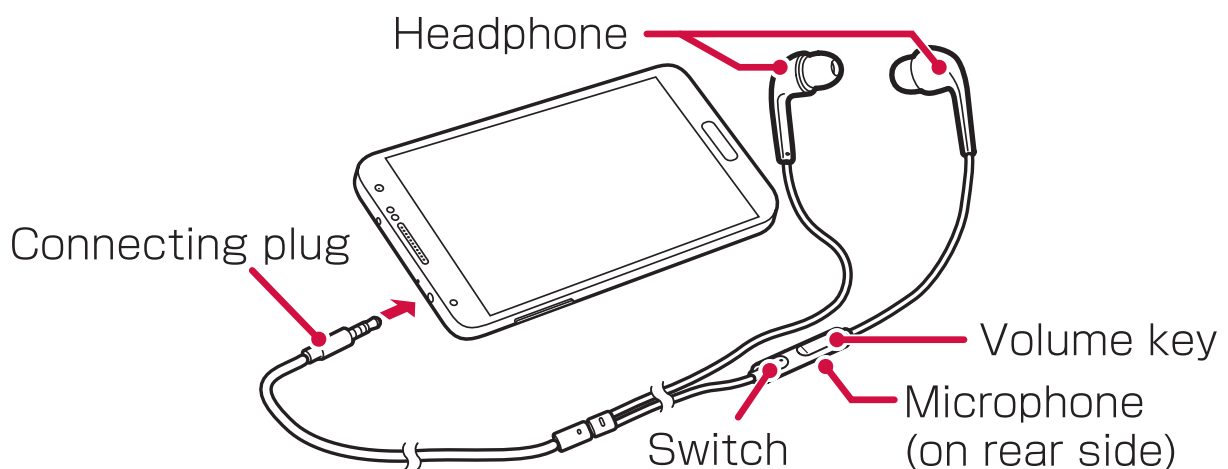
- You can change the reason of rejection from the Home screen,  →  → "Call settings" → "Set up call rejection messages" (P.192).
- To stop ringtone sounding or vibration, press  (Volume key).

Using Stereo Headset with Microphone

When you connect Stereo Headset with Microphone (sample), you can answer an incoming call by pressing the switch of Stereo Headset with Microphone.

Attaching Stereo Headset with Microphone

- 1 Insert the connecting plug of Stereo Headset with Microphone to the headphone connection jack of the terminal



Information

- Firmly insert the connecting plug to the end. If the connecting plug stays on the way, sound may not be heard.

Receiving a call using Stereo Headset with Microphone

1 When a call is received, press the switch of Stereo Headset with Microphone

- You can talk when the call is connected. Your voice is sent to the other party from the microphone of Stereo Headset with Microphone.

To reject a call reception

While receiving a call, press the switch of Stereo Headset with Microphone for 1 second or longer and release it.

2 When the call ends, press the switch again

Information

- Even when Stereo Headset with Microphone is connected to the terminal, ringtone and alarm are heard from the terminal.
- Pressing the volume key of Stereo Headset with Microphone while a call is incoming stops the ringtone or vibration. Pressing the volume key during a call adjusts voice sound volume (listening volume) of the other party.

Operation during a call

- 1** A call is received
 - A reception screen appears.
- 2** Drag  to outside of the circle
 - A call screen appears and calling starts.



Calling screen

The following operations are available on the calling screen.

- ① **Personalize call sound**
Set in-call sound quality.
 - ② **Noise reduction off**
Enable/disable the noise reduction function.
 - ③ **Add call***
Make a second call.
 - ④ **Speaker**
Emit the other party's voice from the speaker to call hands-free.
 - ⑤ **Hold*/Unhold***
Hold/unhold a call.
 - ⑥ **Extra volume**
Enable/disable maximum volume to make the other party's voice easier to be heard.
To adjust volume of other party's voice, press  (Volume key) while calling.
 - ⑦ **Keypad/Hide**
Show/hide the keypad. Tap keypad to send touch-tone signal.
 - ⑧ **End call**
End a call.
 - ⑨ **Headset**
Connect with Bluetooth device to call hands-free.
 - ⑩ **Mute**
Mute your voice not to be heard by the other party.
- * Operations can be done only when you subscribe to "Call waiting".

Menu on calling screen

Tap  on the calling screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Contacts	Display registered information list of Contacts.
Message	Send SMS.
Record voice/Stop recording	Record/stop recording your current call. Recorded voice data can be played with Voice recorder (P.357).

Information

- To adjust the volume of the other party's voice (call volume), press  (Volume key) during a call.
- The call screen is turned off automatically when the screen is covered by making the terminal close to your face (except for attaching headset, etc.) or about 30 seconds are passed with no operation. To display the call screen, keep the terminal away from your face or press  / .

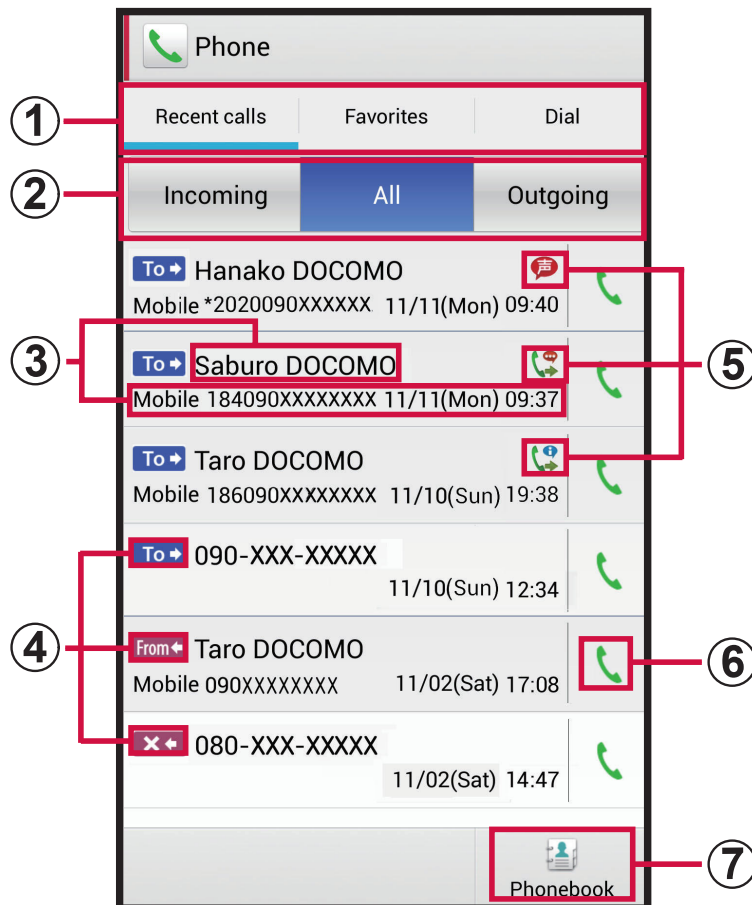
Call logs

In Recent calls, you can check logs of dialed calls, received calls, missed calls by a list.

- Up to 500 items can be displayed.

1 From the Home screen, → "Recent calls"

- A Recent calls screen appears.



Call log screen

- ① **Recent calls: Recent calls is displayed.**
Favorites: Contacts list added to the Favorites is displayed (P.201).
Dial: Display dial screen (P.162).
- ② **Switch logs**
Switch display between Incoming log and Outgoing log. Tap "All" to display all incoming/outgoing call logs.
- ③ **Name, Phone number, Call date and time**
Tap to open the recent calls screen.
 - Tap an item on the outgoing screen to make a call, send an SMS, save in the phonebook, show profile screen, etc.
 - Touch and hold an item to edit number before call, delete from call log, search location, etc.
- ④ **Call log icon**
 -  : Outgoing call log
 -  : Incoming call log
 -  : Missed call log
- ⑤ **Status icon for incoming/outgoing**
 -  : Call with Koe-no-Takuhaibin (P.182)
 -  : Call with the caller ID (dial with "186")
 -  : Call without the caller ID (dial with "184")
 -  : Outgoing/incoming international call
- ⑥ **Call key:** Call is made at the phone number saved in the history.
- ⑦ **Phonebook:** "docomo phonebook" application appears.

Information

- Select the party who is not registered to the phonebook and then tap "Add Phonebook", you can newly add/overwrite a phone number to the phonebook.
- In the Recent calls screen, select other party who is saved in the phonebook and tap "Profile" on the screen to display a profile screen in the phonebook. Or tap "Communication" to check the call logs.
- When there is a missed call,  appears on the status bar. Scroll the status bar downward and tap "Missed call" to display detailed screen. You can tap "Call" to call back. Tap "Message" to display creating message screen for the caller.
- Alternatively, from the Home screen, 
→ Tap "Dial" to activate "Dial" application provided by Samsung, and then tap "Logs" to check incoming/outgoing call log. However, available function etc. of the application differs from "Phone" application provided by DOCOMO.

Menu on Call log screen

Tap  on the Call log screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Delete all	Delete call logs.
Call settings	→ P.182
Set start-up screen	Set the displayed screen as a default when tapping  on the Home screen.*

* Depending on the Home application you are using, the setting may not be effective.

Answering message

Set answering message which plays answering message and records caller's message when you cannot answer an incoming call.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → 
→ "Call settings"
- 2** "Answering message settings" →
"Play answering message"
→ "On"/"Turn on when set to vibrate/
silent"
 - Tap "Language" to set language for answering message.
 - Tap "Play after" to set answer time from 0 to 120 seconds.

Information

- When there is a recorded message,  appears on the status bar. Scroll the status bar downward and tap "New recorded message" to check the recorded message. From the Home screen,  → 
→ "Call settings" → "Answering message settings" → "Recorded messages" to open recorded messages.
- Recordable time and number of savable items depend available memory space in the system memory (phone memory).

Making an international call (WORLD CALL)

WORLD CALL is an international telephone service that you can use inside Japan with DOCOMO terminal.

For using overseas, see P.494 and after.

- Depending on the network operator, the caller ID may not be shown/displayed properly. In this case, calls cannot be made from the logs.

For WORLD CALL, contact "docomo Information Center" provided on the last page of this manual.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Dial" → "0", "1", "0" → Country code → Area code (city code) → Enter a phone number of the other party

- Please omit the prefix "0" in the area code (city code). However, "0" may be required to dial to some countries or areas such as Italy.

2 Tap 

3 When the call ends, "End call"

Information

- When "0" is touched and held to enter prefix "+" before "Country code-Area code (City code)-phone number", international dial assist screen appears when making a call. When you tap "Call by WORLD CALL", "+" is changed to an international access code "009130010", and you can make an international call.

Call settings

You can set functions for calling from the Home screen,  →  → Tap "Call settings".

Item	Description
Network service	
Koe-no-Takuhaibin	The service delivers your voice message recorded by phone to the other party.
Voice mail service	The service takes voice message of the other party for you if you cannot answer an incoming call.
Call forwarding service	The service forwards a call if you cannot answer an incoming call.
Call waiting	The service which allows you to put the current call on hold and answer a second call or make a call to another party.

Item	Description
Network service	
Caller ID notification	Notify your phone number on the screen display of the other party when making a call.
Nuisance call blocking service	Save caller's number and set call rejection.
Caller ID display request service	Activate/deactivate Caller ID request.
Second call settings	Activate/deactivate Second call settings.
Call notification	Activate/deactivate missed call notification.
Set English message	Set English guidance.
Remote operation settings	Activate/deactivate remote operation.
Public mode (power OFF) settings	While the terminal is OFF or in Airplane mode, a guidance message indicating that the receiver is in a place where power should be turned off is heard on the caller's terminal and then the call ends.

Item	Description
Roaming settings	
Restricting incoming calls	Activate/deactivate barring incoming call during International roaming.
Incoming notification while roaming	Activate/deactivate Missed call notification for roaming.
Roaming guidance	Activate/deactivate Roaming guidance.

Item	Description
Roaming settings	
International dial assist	
Automatic conversion	Set ON/OFF of Automatic conversions. When it is turned on, an international dial assist screen appears for calls with "+" entered at the beginning of the phone number. Tap "Call by WORLD CALL" to convert "+" to an international access code registered in "International prefix".
Country code	Register/add country code for international call.
International prefix	Save/add prefix international access code for international call.

Item	Description
Roaming settings	
Network service	
Remote operation (charged)	Set network services such as voicemail from overseas. • Activate "Remote operation(charged)" (P.183) beforehand. • For operations from overseas, international call fee to Japan in the country you use is charged. • Depending on overseas network operators, you cannot make the settings.
Caller ID request (charged)	
Roaming call notification (charged)	
Roaming guidance (charged)	
Voice mail (charged)	
Call forwarding (charged)	
Call rejection	
Auto reject mode	Set Auto reject mode.
Auto reject list	Set the number when auto reject mode is set to "Auto reject numbers". → P.193
Set up call rejection messages	→ P.192

Item	Description
Answering/ending calls	
The home key answers calls	Set whether to answer call by pressing ☐ .
Voice control	Set whether to answer a call by voice command.
The power key ends calls	Set whether to end call by pressing ☐ . If marked, pressing ☐ shows calling screen when the screen backlight is turned off and the screen is locked during a call.
Answering message settings	
Recorded messages	→ P.179
Play answering message	→ P.179

Item	Description
Answering message settings	
Language	→ P.179
Play after	→ P.179
Turn off screen during calls	Set whether to turn the screen display off when the screen is covered by your face during a call.
Call alerts	
Call vibrations	→ P.191
Call status tones	→ P.191
Alerts on call	→ P.191
Incoming call notifications	Set whether to pop up an incoming call notification when the display is ON.
Call accessories	
Automatic answering	Set whether to answer automatically while connecting to a headset etc.

Item	Description
Call accessories	
Automatic answering timer	Set response time for auto-answering when "Automatic answering" is marked.
Outgoing call conditions	Set whether to make a call from a Bluetooth headset even when screen is locked.
Additional settings	
Auto area code	Set whether to add an area code automatically.
Additional service	
Register USSD	When a new network service is introduced by DOCOMO, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.
Register reply message	Record reply messages applicable to codes (USSD). Reply messages are returned from the service center when the additional services are executed.

Item	Description
Ringtones and keypad tones	
Ringtones	Set incoming call ringtone.
Vibrations	Set vibrator.
Vibrate when ringing	Set whether to vibrate the terminal for incoming call.
Keypad tones	Set operation sound when tapping number key on the dial screen to ON/OFF.
Personalize call sound	Customize to set in-call sound quality to suit to user.
Noise reduction	Set to reduce ambient noise during a call.
Increase volume in pocket	Set whether to increase volume of ringtone when there is incoming call while the terminal is in a pocket, bag, etc.

Notifying call status by sound

1 From the Home screen,  →  → "Call settings" → "Call alerts"

2 Tap an item you want to set

Item	Description
Call vibrations	
Answer vibration	Set whether to vibrate the terminal when the other party answers your call.
Call-end vibration	Set whether to vibrate terminal when the call ends.
Call status tones	
Call connect tone	Set whether to sound start calling tone.
Minute minder	Set whether to activate call duration notification on a minute-by-minute basis.
Call end tone	Set whether to sound stop calling tone when ending a call.
Alerts on call	
Alerts on call	Set whether to sound notification sound when there is an alarm or SMS reception during a call.

Registering reason of rejection for sending via SMS when rejecting call

The terminal can reject a reception of call and inform the caller of the reason of rejection by SMS. Up to 6 rejection messages can be registered.

- By default, 5 rejection messages are registered.

1 From the Home screen,  →  → "Call settings" → "Set up call rejection messages"

2 "Create" → Enter a rejection message → "Save"

To edit registered rejection message

Tap a rejection message to edit → Edit the rejection message → Tap "Save".

To delete a rejection message

 → Mark the rejection message you want to delete/mark "Select all" → "Delete".

Information

- For rejection message, up to 70 full-width characters (up to 160 half-width alphanumeric characters) can be entered.

Rejecting call receptions from specified phone number

You can register the phone number you want to reject the calls. Up to 100 phone numbers can be registered.

1 From the Home screen,  →  → "Call settings" → "Call rejection" → "Auto reject list"

2 "Create"

To reject calls without the caller ID

Mark "Unknown".

To edit registered phone number

Tap the phone number you want to edit → Edit the phone number → Tap "Save".

To delete a registered phone number

 → Mark the phone number you want to delete/Mark "Select all" → Tap "Delete" → "Delete".

3 Enter the phone number you want to reject

- To quote a phone number from Logs or Phonebook,  → "Logs"/"Contacts" → If "Contacts" is selected, select an application → "Always"/"Just once" → Tap the number you want to register.

4 "Match criteria" → Tap a sorting rule

5 "Save"

- Unmark check on saved phone number to cancel reject call.

Information

- To reject saved phone number, select "Auto reject numbers" in "Auto reject mode" (P.186).
- Touch and hold a registered phone number to edit or delete.

Registering to phonebook

Manage various contact information such as name, phone number or mail address using "docomo phonebook" application provided by DOCOMO.

- For using the cloud phonebook service, docomo phonebook application is required. When you activate the application for the first time (including activation after initializing the application), the "Use of Cloud" screen appears. Start use of cloud.

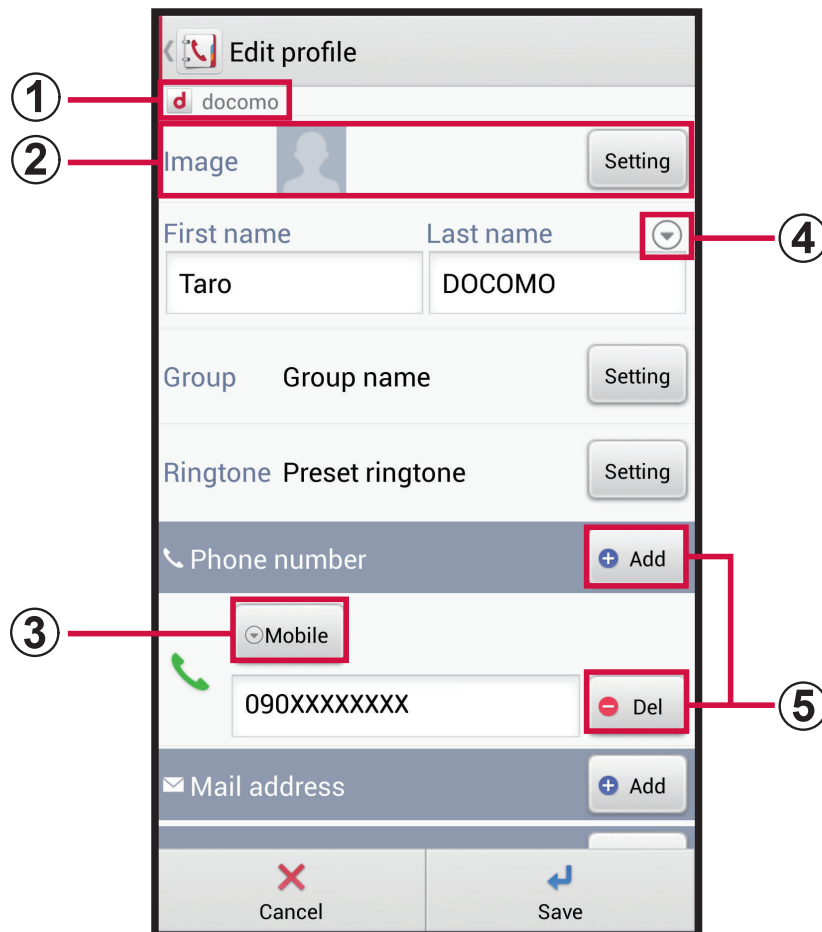
1 From the Home screen, → "docomo phonebook"

- By default, contacts list screen appears.

2 "Register" → Select a saving location

- If you do not set up Google account, a saving location selection screen does not appear. Entered data is saved to docomo account.

Saving to docomo account



Contact editing screen

① Account icon

A saving location icon appears.

- If you combine contacts in different accounts, two or more account icons appear.

② Image field

Tap "Setting" to register an image. To take a photo, tap "Take photo". To select a saved image, tap "Select picture".

③ Label key

Select a content label (item). To create an optional label name, tap "Custom" in the list.

④ Detail entry key

Enter detailed information such as name prefix or middle name.

⑤ Add/Delete key

Add/delete an entry field of selected item.

Saving contacts to the terminal

From the Home screen,  → "Contacts" →  → "Device".

3 Enter the required items

- Tap "Setting" in "Group" to separate the contacts into some groups.
- Tap "Setting" in "Ringtone" to set individual ringtone.
- Tap "Add" in "SNS · Blog" to enter SNS information.
- Tap  in "Others" to enter address, nickname or memo.
- The items that can be set varies by the saving location of the contacts or language setting (P.422).

4 "Save"

- If the contact is not displayed, on the contacts list screen, tap  → "Others" → "Accounts to display" to change the display settings.

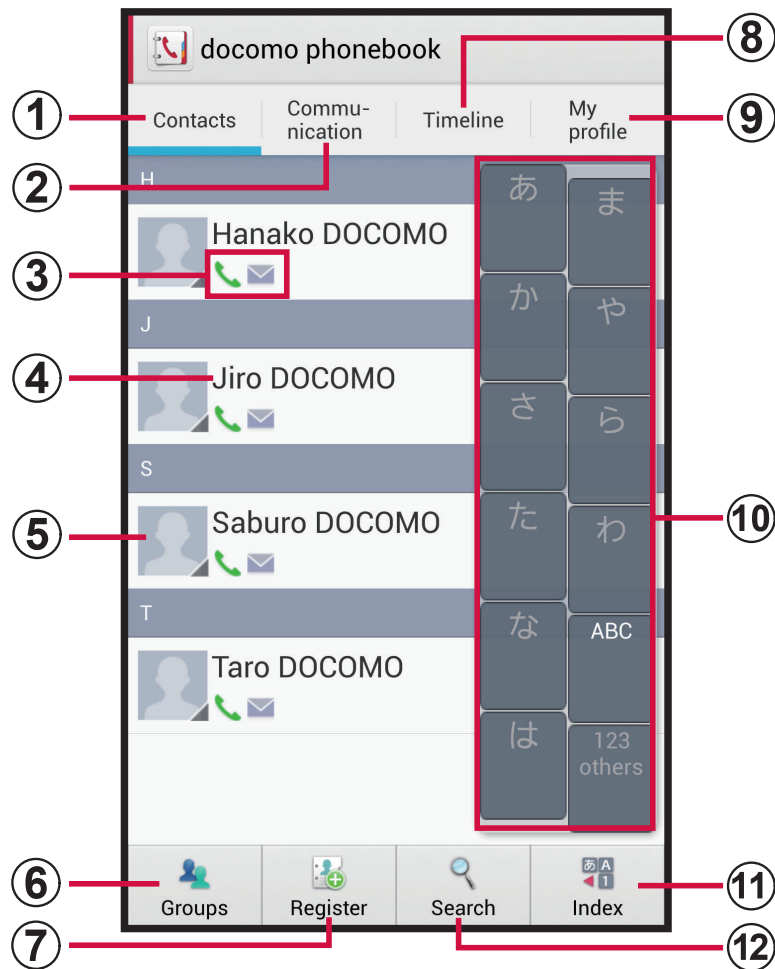
Information

- Alternatively, from the Home screen,  → Tap "Contacts" provided by Samsung to activate "Contacts" application to register or manage contacts. However, available function etc. differs from "docomo phonebook" application provided by DOCOMO.
- In "Contacts" application, tap  in the contacts list → "Speed dial setting" and select the number to be assigned for speed dial to save the contact. Contacts saved from "Speed dial setting" are displayed when number keypad in "Dial" application is tapped, which allows you to quickly make a call.

Checking/Editing a contact

1 From the Home screen, → "docomo phonebook"

- A contacts list screen appears. When the contacts list is not displayed, tap "Contacts".



Contacts list screen

① Contacts

- Display the contact list screen.

② Communication

- Incoming/outgoing call log, sending/receiving log of sp-mode mail* and SMS* are shown. You can make a call or send SMS etc. from the log.
 - * Register the service beforehand from the Communication screen,  → "Update setting" → Tap "Take" for a service whose

history you want to take.

- On the communication screen, tap "Disp. item" to set displayed items (phone/sp-mode mail/SMS/each SNS*).

* Appears only when you have started using cloud service and use My SNS function.

③ Registered content

- Registered contents are displayed by icons.

④ Name registered in the phonebook

⑤ Photo set in the phonebook

- By tapping the other party's image registered in the phonebook and then tapping the icon, you can make a call, create SMS or email, etc.

⑥ Groups

- Select a group to display (P.202).

⑦ Register

- Add contacts (P.195).

⑧ Timeline

- When cloud is ON, Timeline of SNS/blog set in My SNS function appears.
- Tap to display the detail screen and you can post comment or Like!

⑨ My profile

- Profile screen appears. You can check the phone number, edit/manage your own profile information, create name card data using name card creator application (P.204).

⑩ Index character display area

- Tap "Index" to display index characters by which you can search a name in the order of the Japanese syllabary, alphabet, etc.

⑪ Index

- Display index.

⑫ Search

- Search contacts.

2 Tap the contact you want to check

- A profile screen appears.
- To make a call, tap a phone number and tap "Call".
- To create SMS, tap  in the phone number field.
- Tap  in the phone number field to use Koe-no-Takuhaibin (P.182).
- To create a mail, tap a mail address and select an application.
- Tap "Communication" to check the call logs etc. with the selected party.

To edit a contact

Tap "Edit".

Adding a contact to Favorites

Add contacts to "Favorites".

- 1 On the Contacts list screen, tap the contact you want to add to Favorites
→ Tap  (white) to change to  (yellow)

- Added contact is displayed in the "Favorites" group.

Checking contacts by group

You can manage and use contacts by group setting when saving contacts.

1 On the Contacts list screen, "Groups"

- Groups appear on the left of screen. The number of contact items appears in each group.
- Tap "Close" to close Groups.

2 Tap a group you want to check → Tap a contact

Adding/Editing a group

1 On the Contacts list screen, "Groups" → "Add" → Select an account

To edit saved groups

Touch and hold the group you want to edit
→ Tap "Edit group".

2 Select color and icon → Enter a group name

3 "OK"

Information

- "Add" for Groups is displayed at the lowest part of Groups.
- You can select color or icon for only groups saved in docomo account.

Deleting groups

- 1 On the Contacts list screen, "Groups"
- 2 Touch and hold the group you want to delete → "Delete group" → "OK"

Adding contact to a group

- 1 On the Contacts list screen, "Groups"
- 2 Touch and hold a contact → Drag it onto the group you want to add it to

To delete contact from a group

Tap a group that includes a contact you want to delete → Touch and hold the contact you want to delete → Drag it onto a group you have set.

Information

- Only contacts saved in docomo account or Google account can be added to the group.

Making a call from phonebook

- 1 On the Contacts list screen, tap the recipient you want to call
 - A profile screen appears.
- 2 Tap a phone number → "Call"

Registering My profile

- 1 On the Contacts list screen, "My profile"
 - Profile screen appears.
- 2 "Edit"

Creating/editing name card data

Tap "Create new"/"Edit" and follow the onscreen instructions.

- 3 Enter the required items → "Save"

Information

- To delete name card data, tap "Delete" → "OK".
- Tap "Exchange this name card" to exchange registered name card data through network.

Importing/Exporting contacts

You can import/export contacts between microSD card or docomo mini UIM card and the terminal. Also, you can send via email as contact data.

1 On the Contacts list screen,  → "Others" → "Import/Export"

2 Perform the following operations

To import contacts

"Import from SIM card"/"Import from SD card"
→ Select a location to save

- If "Import from SD card" is selected, import contacts from SD card.
- If you do not set up Google account, a saving location selection screen does not appear. It is saved to docomo account.
- When multiple contacts data (vCard) are saved in the microSD card, a phonebook selection screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions to select import method.

To export contacts

Tap "Export to SD card" → Select export method → "OK" → Operate following the onscreen instructions.

To send as contact data (vCard)

"Share phonebook data" → Select sending method.

Menu on contacts list screen/profile screen

Tap  on the contacts list screen/profile screen to display the following items.

□ Contacts screen

Item	Description
Delete	Delete contacts.
General settings	Set for international roaming or Wi-Fi use of docomo phonebook.
Cloud menu	Display the cloud menu.
Announcement	Display information from i-concier etc.
Contact update notice	Display a list of notifications for "Contact update notice".
Help	Check how to use Phonebook or precautions.

Item	Description
Others	
Import/Export	→ P.205
Sync with Data Center	Sync with Backup center and back up.
Contacts display order	Change display order of contacts.
Accounts to display	View only contacts corresponding to tapped account.
About	Check the version of "docomo phonebook" application provided by DOCOMO or the number of phonebook items.
Open source licenses	Display Open source license.

□ Profile screen

Item	Description
Share	Send contacts via Bluetooth or by mail attachment.
Delete	Delete contacts.
Set ringtone	Set individual ringtone.
Join/Separate	Link related contacts such as family, company, etc. to put into one joined contact or separate the joined contact.
SNS/contacts link settings	Set SNS link function. • Timeline is shown only for contacts in docomo account.

Information

- Contacts linked by "Join" are joined into the contact that the link operation is performed, and are not displayed on the Contacts list.

docomo backup

You can move and back up phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, etc. using external media such as microSD card.

- For instructions, see P.362.

Mail/Web browser

sp-mode mail

Send/receive the mail using i-mode mail address (@docomo.ne.jp). You can use pictogram and Deco-mail. Mails can be received automatically.

For details, see NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website.

- 1** From the Home screen, 
- 2** Download sp-mode mail application according to the onscreen instructions

SMS

You can send and receive text messages up to 70 full-width characters (160 half-width alphanumeric characters) to/from the terminal with phone number.

Creating and sending SMS

1 From the Home screen,  → "Messages"

- A thread (sender/recipient of SMS) list appears.

2 Tap 

- An SMS creation screen appears.

3 In Enter recipient field, enter a mobile phone number to send

- To send to multiple recipients, enter comma (,) after a cell phone number or tap .
-  → Tap "Groups"/"Favorites"/"Contacts"/"Logs" to enter recipients selecting from Groups, Favorites, Contacts, Logs of Phonebook.

4 Enter text in "Enter message" field

To enter a smiley

 → "Insert smiley" → Tap a smiley you want to enter.

To insert saved data

 → "Add text" → Select an application and then tap data to quote.

5 Tap

To send an SMS on a specified date and time

 → "Scheduling" → Set date you want to send it → "Done" → Tap .

To save composing SMS as a draft

When a recipient and text are entered and the keypad is displayed, tap  twice (When word prediction candidates are displayed, tap  in 3 times).

Information

- You can also send/receive text messages to/from customers using overseas network operators. For available countries/overseas network operators, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.
- To send to users of overseas network operators, enter "+", "Country code" and then "the recipient mobile phone number". Enter the phone number without a leading "0", if any. You can also enter "010", "Country code" and "the recipient mobile phone number" to send messages.
- If "#" or "★" is included in the address, SMS cannot be sent.
- SMS is not sent if the terminal is not ON at the scheduled date for sending SMS.
- Sending-scheduled SMS is sent at the date and time set on the terminal. Depending on network condition or radio wave condition, sending date may be different from the set scheduled one.

Checking received SMS

1 From the Home screen,  → "Messages"

- A thread (sender/recipient of SMS) list appears.

2 Tap a thread you want to read

- An SMS list appears.
- Received SMS is displayed in yellow callout, sending-reserved SMS is displayed in gray callout and sent SMS is displayed in blue callout. Change color or shape of callout for sent/received SMS (P.214).

Information

- If "Notifications" (P.215) is marked, when an SMS is received,  appears on the status bar.

Menu on thread list screen

Tap  on the thread list screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Search	Search SMS.
Delete threads	Delete a thread.
Draft messages	Display SMS saved as draft.
Locked messages	Display locked SMS.

Item	Description
Scheduled messages	Display scheduled SMS.
Spam messages	Display spam SMS.
Settings	
General settings ^{*1}	
Delete old messages	Set whether to delete the oldest SMS automatically when the number of SMS exceeds the specified limit number.
Text message limit	Set limit numbers of SMS.
Text templates	Add/edit phrase.
Display ^{*1}	
Bubble style	Set the style for callout.
Background style	Set the style for background.
Split view	Set whether to enable Split view for landscape view.
Use the volume key	Set whether to change character size by 0.

Item	Description
Settings	
Signature settings ^{*1}	
Add signature	Set whether to add signature.
Signature text	Edit signature.
Text message (SMS) settings ^{*2}	
Delivery reports	Set whether to request delivery report of SMS each time you send.
Manage SIM card messages	Check/delete/copy messages copied to the docomo mini UIM card to the terminal.
Message center	Set for SMS center. • Usually, you do not need to set.
Expiration date	Set expiry date for an SMS you send.
Notification settings ^{*3}	
Notifications	Set whether to notify with sound and icon when SMS is received.

Item	Description
Settings	
Notification settings*3	
Select ringtone	Set notification sound for sounding when an SMS is received.
Vibrate	Set whether to vibrate when a message is received.
Message alert repetition	Set repetition interval for receiving notification.
Preview message	Set whether to display text preview on the status bar or unlock screen when SMS is received.
Spam message settings*3	
Spam settings	Set whether to reject spam mail.
Add to spam numbers	Register numbers to reject.
Add to spam phrases	Register phrases to reject.
Block unknown senders	Set whether to reject SMS from unknown senders.

- *1 Appears when "General" tab is tapped.
- *2 Appears when "SMS" tab is tapped.
- *3 Appears when "More" tab is tapped.

Menu on SMS list screen

In SMS list screen, tap  to display the following items.

Item	Description
Insert smiley	Enter a smiley.
Add text	Insert saved data.
View contact/Add to contacts	View contact/add contact
Add recipients	Create SMS entering other recipient.
Scheduling	Set date and time you want to send.
Add to spam numbers ^{*1}	Register sender's number as spam SMS.
Remove from spam numbers ^{*2}	Remove the other party's mobile phone number from the spam SMS list.
Discard	Discard creating SMS.

- *1 Appears on the SMS list screen for the party not-registered to spam SMS list.
- *2 Appears on SMS list screen for the party registered to spam SMS list.

Menu on message screen

Touch and hold a sent/received SMS or scheduled SMS to display the following items.

Item	Description
Resend ^{*1}	Resend aborted SMS.
Delete ^{*1*2}	Delete SMS.
Send now ^{*3}	Send scheduled SMS right now.
Cancel message ^{*3}	Delete a scheduled SMS.
Copy	Copy an SMS text.
Forward	Forward an SMS.
Lock/Unlock	Lock/unlock an SMS to prevent being deleted.
Edit message ^{*1*3}	Edit an aborted/a scheduled SMS.
Share	Send contacts via Bluetooth function or email.
Copy to SIM ^{*2}	Copy an SMS to docomo mini UIM card.
View message details	Display a type, sender/recipient, date, scheduled date and time, delivery report or status.

*1 Appears for aborted SMS.

*2 Appears for sent/received SMS.

*3 Appears for scheduled SMS.

Information

- Alternatively, you can tap  for an scheduled SMS → "OK" to send the scheduled SMS immediately.
- Up to 20 SMS messages can be copied to the docomo mini UIM card.

Email

You can set a POP3- or IMAP-compatible Email account provided by a general service provider to send/receive email.

Flow of preparation for using Email

■ Connecting via packet communication

Step 1: Subscribe to a provider

Step 2: Set an access point (P.395)

Step 3: Set Email account (P.221)

Step 4: Create and send email (P.230)

■ Connecting via Wi-Fi

Step 1: Determine utility form

- For connecting to Public wireless LAN service/company LAN, ask a service provider/network administrator about the required information for connection.
- For connecting under environment such as home, install an access point and obtain necessary information for connection from the Instruction manual of the installed access point, etc.

Step 2: Make settings for Wi-Fi (P.383)

Step 3: Set Email account (P.221)

Step 4: Create and send email (P.230)

Information

- If you send/receive emails to/from a PC or other device, some pictograms, HTML mails, etc. may not be displayed correctly depending on the usage environment.
- If "Sync Email" (P.223) is marked, when the terminal sends/receives an email, synchronization with the mail server is performed. Items to be synchronized such as "Inbox" will be the same state as the synchronizing server.

Setting Email account

When you enter mail address and password, Email account settings are downloaded and set automatically.

- If settings cannot be made automatically or you make settings manually, you need to enter settings for sending and receiving. Prepare the required information of Email account settings in advance.

1 From the Home screen, → "Email"

To set up second or later Email account

From the Home screen,  → Tap "Email" →  → "Settings" → "Add account"

2 Enter mail address and password → "Next"

- Settings of Email account are downloaded automatically.
- If the settings are not downloaded automatically and an account type selection screen appears, follow the onscreen instruction to make settings.
- "Send email from this account by default" check box appears when setting the second Email account. Marking this check box can set the account as default account. From the Email list screen, tap  → "Settings" → "Account settings" → Select an account you want to set as default → Mark/unmark "Default account" to change the default account.

To set manually

Enter an email address and password → "Manual setup" → Follow the onscreen instruction to make settings.

3 Set account options → "Next"

4 Enter account name and user name → "Done"

Setting Email account

Account settings

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Email"
 - The Email list screen appears.
- 2**  → "Settings" → "Account settings"
→ Tap an account you want to set
- 3** Tap an item you want to set

Item	Description
Sync settings	
Sync Email	Set whether to synchronize with Email server.
Sync schedule	Set Email synchronizing timing.
Size to retrieve emails	Set email size for receiving. • Even if "All"/"All including attachments" is selected, a part of mail message may be omitted when email size is too large.
Signature	Set whether to add signature to a mail message. Also edit signature.

Item	Description
Default account	Set whether to use as default Email account. If you mark it,  is displayed at the set account in the Email accounts list screen.
Password	Set a password.
Notification settings	
Email notifications	Set whether to notify with sound and icon when an email is received.
Select ringtone	Set notification sound for sounding when an email is received.
Vibrate	Set whether to vibrate when an email is received.
More settings	
Common settings	
Account name	Change account name.
Your name	Change user name.
Always Cc/Bcc myself	Add your mail address to Cc/Bcc.

Item	Description
More settings	
Common settings	
Show images	Set whether to display images. If email whose size is exceeded the limit set in "Size to retrieve emails", image is not displayed even when it is marked. For POP3 account, on the message screen, tap "Load more details" (If "Read more details" does not appear, close and reopen the message screen.). For IMAP account, on the message screen, "Attachments" → "Preview" → Tap a file name to download images.
Security options	Encrypt or set security options such as Signature.

Item	Description
More settings	
Data usage	
Number of emails to load	Set number of emails to be displayed.
Auto download attachments ^{*1}	Set whether to download attached files automatically when connecting via Wi-Fi.
Auto resend times	Set number of times for re-sending email automatically.
Server settings	
Incoming settings	Change settings of receiving server.
Outgoing settings	Change settings of sending server.

*1 Does not appear for POP3 account.

Information

- When multiple Email accounts are set, tap an account name on the Email list screen.
→ Tap "Combined inbox" of Combined view.
- To delete an Email account, on the Email list screen,  → "Settings" → "Account settings" →  → Mark an Email account you want to delete → Tap "Delete" → "OK".
- For Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account, the setting items differ.

Basic settings

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Email"
- 2  → "Settings"
- 3 Tap an item you want to set

Item	Description
Display	
Auto fit content	Shrink email content to fit the screen. Zoom in on the details.
Message preview line	Set number of lines for email preview.
Title line in list	Set whether "Subject" or "Sender" is displayed as an email tile.
Composing and sending	
Quick responses	Edit common phrases. You can insert common phrases when entering body texts in email creation screen. → P.231
Default image size	Set image size to be attached.
Delay email sending	Set whether to send email after a specified time elapses. Set waiting time when "Delay email sending" is marked.

Item	Description
Auto advance	Set a screen to display after deleting an email.
Confirm deletions	Set whether to display a confirmation screen when deleting email.
Priority senders	
Priority senders	Set priority sender mail address.
Set as the default folder	Set to display an inbox tray in default sending account for opening email.
Email notifications	Set whether to notify you with notification ringtone and notification icon when receiving email from the priority sender.
Select ringtone	Set notification ringtone when receiving email from the priority sender.
Vibrate	Set whether to notify you with vibration when receiving email from the priority sender.
Spam addresses	Edit a list of sender's address or domain registered as spam mail address.

Item	Description
Rules for filtering	Manage emails on Combined view by specifying words included in sender's address or mail subject.

Information

- For Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account, different setting items are displayed.

Creating and sending an email

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Email"
- 2 Tap 
 - The email creation screen appears.
- 3 In "To" field, enter a mail address to send
 - To add Cc/Bcc, tap "Cc/Bcc" field.
 -  → Tap "Groups"/"Favorites"/"Contacts" and select recipients from Phonebook group, Favorites, contacts to enter.
 - When you set multiple Email accounts, tap sender's name at the top of the screen to switch the Email account.
- 4 Enter a subject in the "Subject" field
- 5 Enter a text in the message field

To attach a file/data

 → Tap a file/data type of attachment → Follow the onscreen instructions to attach a file/data.

To insert file/data

 →  → Tap a file/data type to insert → Follow the onscreen instructions to insert a file/data.

To insert a common phrase for a quick response

 → **T⁺** → Tap the common phrase you want to insert.

To set priority of email sending

 → "Priority" → Select a priority.

To set read/delivered confirmation of email

 → "Tracking options" → Mark "Read receipt"/"Delivery receipt" → Tap "OK".

* Depending on mail server you use, "Read receipt"/"Delivery receipt" may not be worked.

To set encryption of email for sending or Signature

 → "Security options" → Mark "Encrypt"/"Sign" → Tap "OK".

6 Tap

To send email to yourself

 → "Send email to myself"

- When you set multiple Email accounts, tap an account to add to.

To send email by specifying date and time

 → "Scheduled email" → Mark "Scheduled email" → Set date and time to send → Tap "Done" → .

To save the currently editing email as a draft

Tap  or  /  → Tap "Save".

To discard an editing email

 /  → Tap "Discard".

Information

- An email is not sent if the terminal is not ON at the scheduled date for sending email.
- A sending-scheduled email is sent at the date and time set on the terminal. Depending on network condition or radio wave condition, sending date may be different from the set scheduled one.

Checking received emails

1 From the Home screen,  → "Email"

- The Email list screen appears.
- When multiple Email accounts are registered, tap an account name and tap the account folder you want to display, then display the Email list screen.

2 Tap 

3 Tap an email you want to read

- A message screen appears.

Information

- If "Email notifications" (P.229) is marked, when an email is received,  etc. appears on the status bar.
- Tap  on the Email list to search email.
- Tap  on the Email list to switch folders.
- Tap a mail address of sender to register to the phonebook or send email. With mail address registered, you can display the contact or send email.
- When data is attached,  appears on the Email list. When you tap "Attachments" on the message screen, file name etc. appear.
 - Tap "Preview" to check attached data.
 - To save the attached data to the terminal, tap "Save".

Menu on Email list screen/message screen

Tap  on the Email list screen/message screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Sort by ^{*1}	Select conditions and sort emails.
View as ^{*1}	Switch the view of the Email list.
Mark as unread ^{*2}	Change read email to unread.
Add to spam ^{*2*3}	Save address or domain of the sender as spam.
Move ^{*2}	Move an email to the other folder.
Save email ^{*2}	Save email on the terminal.
Set as priority sender/Remove from priority sen... ^{*2}	Set/cancel sender's mail address as a priority sender.
Create filtering rule ^{*2}	Register words included in sender's mail address or mail subject as filtering rule.
Print ^{*2}	Print email using via compatible printer. →P.485

Item	Description
Compose ^{*2}	Compose email.
Font size ^{*1*2}	Set character size.
Delete all ^{*1}	Delete all emails.
Settings ^{*1*2}	Change Email account settings. → P.223
Help ^{*1*2}	Display Help.

*1 Appears on the Email list screen.

*2 Appears on the message screen.

*3 Does not appear for POP 3 account.

Information

- Alternatively, touch and hold an email on the Email list screen to delete () , move () add to spam* () , add star () / remove star () , or mark as unread () / read () .

* Does not appear for POP3 account.

Gmail

You can send/receive emails using Gmail.

- To use Gmail, you need to set Google account (P.433). When a setting screen of Google account appears, perform the settings according to onscreen instructions and then operate it.

Opening Gmail

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Gmail"
- 2** On "Inbox" screen, tap an email you want to read
 - Content of the selected email appears.

Creating and sending Gmail

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Gmail"
- 2** On "Inbox" screen, tap 
 - The Email creation screen appears.
- 3** In To field, enter an address
 - To send an email to multiple recipients, separate with a comma (,).
 - To add Cc/Bcc, tap  → "Add Cc/Bcc".
- 4** Enter a subject in "Subject" field
- 5** Enter a text message in "Compose email" field

6 Tap

To save draft email

Tap  → "Save draft".

To edit draft email

On "Inbox" screen, "Inbox" → Tap "Drafts" → Tap draft email you want to edit → .

Switching accounts

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Gmail"
- 2 On "Inbox" screen, "Inbox"
- 3 Tap an account to switch
 - Inbox of the selected account appears.

Information

- For details on Gmail, from "Inbox" screen,  → Tap "Help" to refer.

Early Warning "Area Mail"

Area Mail is a service with which you can receive emergency earthquake flash reports delivered by the Meteorological Agency etc.

- You can receive Area Mails for free without subscriptions.
- Up to 50 Area Mails can be stored.
- Area Mails cannot be received when the power OFF, in Airplane mode, during International roaming, while displaying the PIN code entry screen, etc. Also if the terminal is low on memory, receiving Area Mail may fail.
- Unreceived Area Mail cannot be received later.

When receiving Early Warning "Area Mail"

When Area Mail is received, the Area Mail buzzer or ringtone sounds, a notification icon appears on the status bar, and receiving screen opens.

- The Area Mail buzzer or ringtone sounds in maximum volume. The setting cannot be changed.
- The Area Mail buzzer or ringtone sounds even in Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate) by default. Setting not to sound in Silent mode is available. → P.239

Viewing received Area Mail

1 From the Home screen,  → "Disaster kit"

- For the first activation, function overview, agreement, etc. appears. Read the contents and then tap "Agree".

2 "Early Warning "Area Mail"" → Tap an Area Mail you want to check

To delete Area Mails

"Early Warning "Area Mail"" → Mark an Area Mail you want to delete → Tap "Delete" → "OK".

- Mark one or more Area Mails and tap "Select all" to mark all mails.

Setting Early Warning "Area Mail"

Set incoming settings and ringtone settings. You can also check receiving operation.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Disaster kit"

2 "Early Warning "Area Mail"" →  → "Settings"

3 Tap an item to set

Item	Description
Receive setting	Set whether to receive Area Mail.

Item	Description
Beep tone	Set ring time of buzzer or ringtone. Set whether to sound buzzer or ringtone in Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate).
Check screen image and beep to...	Check receiving screen and buzzer or ringtone for Earthquake Early Warning, Tsunami Warning and Disaster/Evacuation information.
Other settings	
Receive entry	Register/delete Area Mail other than Earthquake Early Warnings, Tsunami Warnings and Disaster/Evacuation information.

Web browser

Using web browser

Using web browser, you can view web pages as PCs.

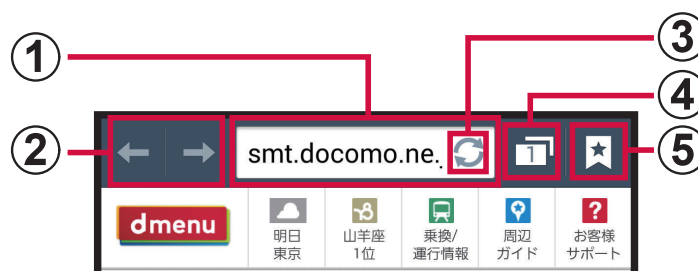
On the terminal, web browser can be used via a packet transmission or Wi-Fi connection.

- Some web pages may not be displayed or may not appear properly.

Activating web browser

1 From the Home screen,

- Web browser activates and web page set as home page (by default, dmenu (<http://smt.docomo.ne.jp/>) (in Japanese only)) appears.



Web browser screen

- ① **Address bar**
Enter a URL of web page or a keyword you want to search.
- ② **Back/Forward**
- ③ **Refresh**

④ **Windows**

Switch between windows, close and open windows.

⑤ **Bookmarks/History**

Display a list of bookmarks/History.

Exiting web browser

- 1** Press and hold  for 1 second or longer → Scroll/flick thumbnail of browser left or right (up or down in the landscape view)
 - Even when you return to the Home screen by pressing  or tap  on the browser screen, the browser is not terminated.

Information

- The following operations are available (Some operations are not available depending on the web page display).
 - Zooming in/out: Widen/narrow the distance between 2 fingers at the point you want to zoom in/out.
 - Zooming in/out a part framed: Double-tap at the point you want to zoom in/out.
 - Scrolling: Scroll/flick the screen.
 - Back to the previous screen: Tap .
 - Using magnifying glass: Touch and hold the screen.
 - Copying text: Touch and hold a text without link → Drag  /  in all directions and select the text range to be copied → "Copy".
 - Searching text: Touch and hold a text without link → Drag  /  in all directions and select the text range to search → "Find"/"Web search".
 - Sharing text: Touch and hold a text without link → Drag  /  in all directions and select the text range to share → "Share via" → Tap sharing method.

Opening new window

1 On the browser screen, 

- Windows manager appears.

2 

- For windows viewing in Incognito mode (P.244),  appears in the window title.

To close window

Tap  in the window you want to close.

Information

- Alternatively, on the browser screen,  → Tap "New window" to display a new window.

Opening window in Incognito mode

View with the browser without history of browser or search remained.

1 On the browser screen,  → "Incognito mode" → "OK"

Information

- Browsing history in Incognito mode is not saved. Closing web pages viewed in Incognito mode clears Cookie. However, files downloaded or bookmarked web pages while viewing in incognito mode can be saved.

Operating links in web pages

1 On the browser screen, touch and hold a link

2 Tap an item you want to use

Item	Description
Open	Open web page.
Open in new window	Open web page in new window.
Save link	Save web page to the terminal/microSD card.
Copy link Web address	Copy URL.
Select text ^{*1}	Select text.
Save image ^{*2}	Save an image to the terminal/microSD card.
Copy image ^{*2}	Copy an image to Clipboard.
View image ^{*2}	Display an image.

*1 Appears only when touching and holding a linked text.

*2 Appears only when touching and holding a linked image.

Information

- Depending on the web pages, some link operation menu may not be displayed or the displayed items may differ.

Menu items on browser screen

Tap  on the browser screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
New window	Open new window.
Add bookmark/ Edit bookmark	Add web page to Bookmarks (P.248) or edit the bookmark.
Add shortcut to home	Add a shortcut of web page to the Home screen.
Share via	Share or send URL of web page via online services/ Bluetooth/mail etc.
Find on page	Search text in web page.
Incognito mode	Display web pages in secret mode. History is not saved. → P.244
Desktop view	Set whether to open the PC version web page.
Brightness	Adjust the screen brightness.
Print	Print browser screen via compatible printer. → P.485
Close current page and a...	Close the displayed window.
Settings	→ P.250
Help	Display Help.

Managing history and bookmarks

Viewing web pages from the history

1 From the Home screen, 

2  → "History"

- A history list appears.
- History is displayed in reverse chronological order of view date.
- ★ (orange) appears for the history which is added as bookmark.

3 Tap a web page you want to view

Information

- To delete all histories, on the history list,  → Tap "Clear history" → "OK".

Adding a web page to Bookmarks

- 1 From the Home screen, 
- 2 Display a web page to bookmark → 
→ "Add bookmark"
- 3 Check or change the title → Tap "My device" → Tap a folder you want to register to → "Save"

Viewing web page from Bookmarks

- 1 From the Home screen, 
- 2 
 - A bookmark list appears.
- 3 Tap a web page you want to view

Information

- When  is tapped on the bookmark list, the following items appear.
 - "List view"/"Thumbnail view": Change display method of list.
 - "Create folder": Create a folder.
 - "Delete": Delete bookmarks.
 - "Change order": Change display order of the bookmark list.
 - "Move to folder": Change the bookmark registering location.

Menu of bookmark/history

The following items appear when touching and holding bookmark/history.

Item	Description
Open in new window ^{*1*2}	Open a web page in a new window.
Delete ^{*1*2}	Delete a history/bookmark.
Edit ^{*1}	Edit the name or URL of the bookmark and change the saving folder.
Copy ^{*2}	Copy URL of web page.
Share via ^{*1*2}	Share URL of web page via online service or send via Bluetooth function or mail attachment etc.
Add shortcut to home ^{*1}	Create shortcut of bookmark on the Home screen.
Add bookmark ^{*2}	Add to bookmark (It is not displayed if web page is already registered to bookmark).
Set as homepage ^{*1*2}	Set a web page as home page.

*1 Appears in bookmark list.

*2 Appears in history list.

Setting web browser

- 1 From the Home screen, 
- 2  → "Settings"
- 3 Tap an item you want to set

Item	Description
Account	Set up Samsung account.
Set homepage	Set a home page.
Auto fill forms	Set text for auto entry to web form field.
Privacy	
Search and Web address suggestions	Set whether to display related keyword etc. when entry in the address bar is attempted.
Preload available links before opening	Set whether to preload links when a web page is loaded.
Remember form data	Set whether to save character information entered to web page.
Remember passwords	Set whether to save user name/password entered to web pages.
Delete personal data	Delete personal data such as browser history, Cookie, passwords, location information.

Item	Description
Screen and text	
Text scaling	Set display magnification of text.
Force zoom	Set whether to disable settings made on web pages to zoom in/out.
Text encoding	Set text encode.
Full screen	Set whether to hide the status bar and display a web page in full screen.
Text booster	Set whether to enlarge text size to display for viewing web pages for PC.
Content settings	
Accept cookies	Set whether to permit to save/read Cookies.
Turn on location	Set whether to permit access to location information of the terminal.
Turn on JavaScript	Set whether to enable JavaScript.
Block pop-ups	Set whether to block pop-up windows.
Default storage	Set a saving location of downloaded data.

Item	Description
Content settings	
Website settings	Display detail of the web page etc. accessed to location information, etc.
Turn on notifications	Set whether to enable notification function.
Clear notifications	Delete notifications.
Reset settings	Delete data and reset settings to return to the default in browser settings.
Bandwidth management	
Preload webpages	Set browser preloading web page in background.
Load images	Set whether to display images.
Open pages in overview	Display a newly opened web page in full view.

dmenu

In dmenu, you can quickly access DOCOMO recommended sites and useful applications.

1 From the Home screen, "dmenu"

- The browser is activated and "dmenu" is displayed.

Information

- To use dmenu, Internet connection by packet communication (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi is required.
- For connecting dmenu and downloading applications introduced by dmenu, a packet communication charge is applied separately. Some downloaded applications automatically perform packet communications.
- Applications introduced by dmenu may include charged ones.

dmarket

You can pick up useful and interesting contents which meet your needs at dmarket.

- For details of dmarket, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

1 From the Home screen, "dmarket"

Play Store

- To use Google Play, you need to set a Google account (P.433).

Installing an application

1 From the Home screen, "Play Store"

2 Search for an application you want to download, then tap it → Check details

3 For free applications, "INSTALL" → "ACCEPT", for charged ones, tap the price → "ACCEPT" → Follow the onscreen instructions

- When downloading and installing are complete,  appears on the status bar.
- Be very cautious about applications that have access to many functions or a significant amount of data. Once you download an application, you are responsible for the results of using the application on the terminal.

Information

- Be sure to check the security of applications, and then install them at your own risk. The terminal may be infected with a virus and the data may be damaged.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for malfunctions, if any, caused by the application you installed. In such case, the repair is charged even during the warranty period.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any disadvantage brought to you or any third party due to an application you installed.
- Some applications automatically perform packet communications. Packet communication is kept active unless you disconnect it or the time-out is occurred.
- If you are not satisfied with the purchased application, you can ask for refund within the specified time frame. Note that refund is accepted only once for each application.
- From the Home screen,  → Tap "Apps layout setting" to locate installed applications on "Home screen"/"Apps list".
- For details of Google Play, on the Google Play screen,  → Tap "Help" to refer.
- For instructions on uninstalling application, see "Uninstalling applications or widgets" (P.159).

Samsung Apps

You can easily download a lot of applications Samsung recommend using Samsung Apps.

Connecting to Samsung Apps

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Samsung Apps"
 - When the disclaimer appears, read it and tap "Accept".
- 2** Search an application you want to use and download it

Information

- Samsung Apps may not be available depending on the country or region. For details, refer to the support page in the Samsung Apps website on a PC.

Osaifu-Keitai

The function allows you to use "Osaifu-Keitai compatible service" for payment or coupon by just holding over a store reader, or "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)" for accessing information by holding over home electrical appliances, smart poster, etc.

You can save electronic money, point, etc. to IC card or docomo mini UIM card.

Also, you can check deposit or balance of electronic money, or point value, take measures against theft or loss by locking Osaifu-Keitai.

For details of Osaifu-Keitai, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

- A setting from the dedicated website or application is required to use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services.
- The data in the IC card^{*1} and docomo mini UIM card^{*2} may be lost or altered because of the malfunction of the terminal (when we repair your Osaifu-Keitai etc., as we cannot repair it with data remained, you are required to erase the data yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data, contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service providers. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.
- If the data in the IC card and docomo mini UIM card is lost, altered or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible

service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

- If the terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.
- Attach Battery Pack SC11 when using Osaifu-Keitai. FeliCa antenna is equipped with Battery Pack SC11.

*1 Data saved to IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai compatible device

*2 Data saved to docomo mini UIM card

Using "Osaifu-Keitai compatible-service"

To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, download Osaifu-Keitai compatible application from Osaifu-Keitai compatible site before setting up. Depending on service, Osaifu-Keitai compatible application does not require to be downloaded.

1 From the Home screen, "Osaifu-Keitai"

- Obtain service information and update a service list.
- If you did not perform Osaifu-Keitai initial settings in "Initial settings" (P.98), follow the onscreen instructions.

2 Tap service you want to use

3 Configure settings for service

4 Hold mark over the reader

- Communication with reader is available.

Information

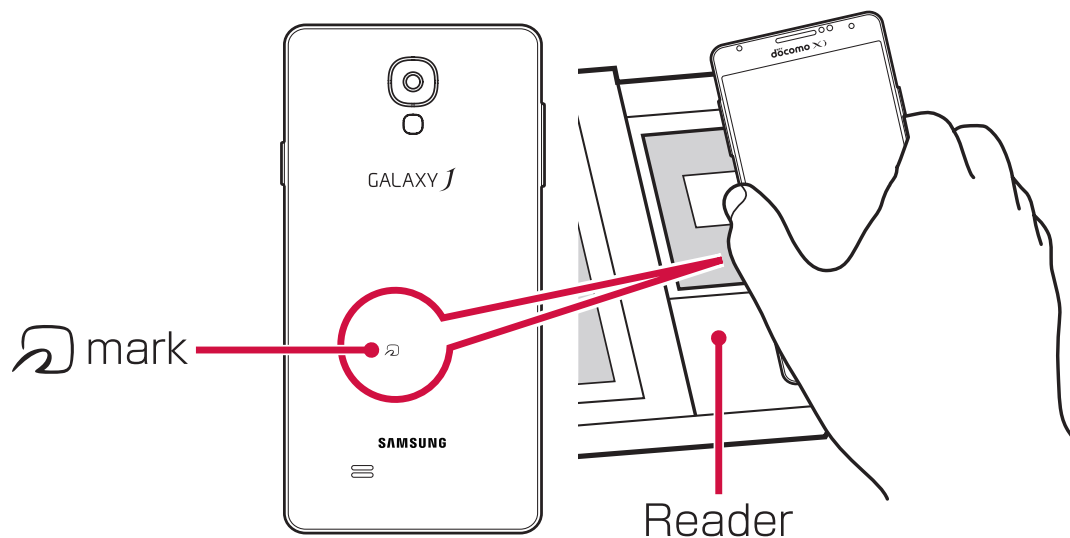
- You can read/write data from/to a reader without activating Osaifu-Keitai compatible application.
- Powering on the terminal is not necessary, but attaching the battery pack is required for use. If the terminal remains powered off for a long time or battery is low, the function may not available even if the battery pack is attached.
- Note that if you do not subscribe sp-mode, a part of Osaifu-Keitai services may not available.

Using "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)"

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Setting"
- 2 Tap  of "Reader/Writer, P2P"
- 3 Hold  mark over an NFC module equipped device, smart poster, etc.

Notes on holding over the device

Please note the following when holding the terminal over an IC card reader or NFC module equipped device.



- Bring the  mark close to the device slowly, not strike strongly.
- Hold the  mark over the device at the center horizontally. If scanning is failed even with it held in front of the center of the scanner, slightly lift up the terminal, or move it backwards/forwards or to the left/right.
- When there is a metal object between the  mark and the device, reading may fail. Putting the terminal into a case or cover may affect communication. In that case, remove the case or cover.

Locking Osaifu-Keitai function

Use "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set" to restrict Osaifu-Keitai function or the services. NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is different from the screen lock and SIM card lock.

1 From the Home screen, "Osaifu-Keitai"

2 "Lock Settings" → Enter a new password → Tap "Confirm new password" → Enter the password again → "OK"

- If a password is already set, "Lock Settings" → Enter the password → Tap "OK".

To unlock

"Lock Settings" → Enter a password → Tap "OK".

To change password

While unlocking, tap "Lock settings" → "PW Change" → Enter a password → Tap "Input password" field → Enter a new password → Tap "Confirm new password" → Enter the password again → Tap "OK".

Information

- When using "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set",  or  appears on the status bar.
- Be careful about remaining battery level because "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set" cannot be canceled if the battery runs out while using "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set". If the battery runs out, charge the battery and then cancel "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set".
- To use Osaifu-Keitai menu while using "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set", enter a password.
- A password for NFC/Osaifu-Keitai cannot be deleted even if the terminal is reset.
- Unlock "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" with the docomo mini UIM card used at the time when "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock" is set inserted to the terminal.

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained to mobile terminals. It can be obtained from the IC card reader or site as store information, coupon ticket, etc. Obtained ToruCa is saved to the "ToruCa" application and can be displayed, searched, and updated using "ToruCa" application. For details of ToruCa, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Information

- For obtaining, displaying or updating ToruCa, a packet communication charge may be applied.
- Some ToruCa provided for i-mode terminals may not be obtained, displayed, or updated by your phone.
- Depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider), the following functions may not be available.

Obtaining from the reader, updating, sharing ToruCa, moving/copying to microSD card, displaying on the map*

- * Some ToruCa which can display a map from ToruCa (details) may not display a map from the ToruCa list.

Information

- While using NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock set, you cannot obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader.
- If you mark "重複チェック (Duplication check)", obtaining the same ToruCa redundantly is not available. To obtain the same ToruCa redundantly, unmark it.
- When ToruCa is sent via mail, it is sent in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- Depending on the mail application, ToruCa received via mail may not be saved.
- Via some browsers, ToruCa cannot be obtained.
- When ToruCa is moved or copied to microSD card, it is moved or copied in the condition before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- If initial setting for Osaifu-Keitai is not made, you may not be able to obtain ToruCa with an IC card reader.

Mobacas

Mobacas is a broadcasting service for smartphones. You can use 2 watching styles : "Real Time" (broadcasting in real time style) that allows you to watch programs in real time and "Shift Time" (broadcasting in storage style) that allows you to enjoy comic, novels, music, games, etc. as well as movies and dramas anytime and anywhere. Also, you can enjoy new broadcasting services including social service collaborated services using the communication function of the terminal. (In Japanese only)

For details on Mobacas, refer to the Mobacas broadcast station (NOTTV) website.

NOTTV: <http://www.nottv.jp/>
(Japanese only)

Using Mobacas

- A separate pay-TV subscription to the Mobacas broadcast station (NOTTV) is required to use Mobacas.
- You cannot receive and watch broadcasts without the docomo mini UIM card being attached the terminal.
- Mobacas is a broadcasting service provided in Japan.
- Using or recording Shift Time mode requires sufficient memory on the microSD card or system memory (phone). Using microSD card in CLASS 4 or later is recommended (you can set to select storage).

Broadcast wave and service area

The radio wave received via Mobacas differs from that of received via Xi/FOMA service and 1 Seg. For this reason, the signal cannot be received at places where the Mobacas broadcast does not reach or while broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the terminal is outside or inside the Xi/FOMA service area.

Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the terminal is inside the area of Mobacas broadcasting service.

- Places that are far from the base station that sends signal
- Places where the signal is disrupted due to the landscaper or structures such as mountain areas or behind buildings

- Places where the signal is weak or does not reach, such as tunnels, basements, or places inside buildings

Improving reception status

- Fully extending the 1 Seg/Mobacas antenna and moving to other location may improve signal reception.
- For using 1 Seg/Mobacas antenna, see "1 Seg/Mobacas antenna" (P.279).

Watching Mobacas

1 From the Home screen, "NOTTV"

- The home screen of NOTTV appears.
- For the first activation, initial settings are required. Confirm the terms of services for the application fully to the lowest part and tap "同意する (Agree)". The initial settings start automatically. Perform the initial settings in good communication environment.
- When the initial settings are finished, a guidance screen appears. Flick the screen left or right to confirm the content and then tap "閉じる (Close)" → "閉じる (Close)" / "閉じる (今後表示しない) (Close (Not show again))". On the guidance screen, tap "NOTTVのトリセツ (NOTTV manual)" / "NOTTVご利用ガイド (NOTTV user's guide)" to check NOTTV manual (video) or the user's guide.

- When a confirmation screen for initial settings appears since docomo mini UIM card is replaced, tap "初期設定する (Make initial settings)" and perform same operation as first activation.

2 Tap a thumbnail of program/content

- When watching Real Time program, flick left or right to select channels.
- Rotate the terminal sideways or tap  to change display.  appears when the screen is tapped (contents display tree varies by programs/contents).
- Tap "データ (Data)" to display data broadcasting.
- Tap "ソーシャル (Social)" to display timeline corresponding programs/contents.
- Tap "インフォ (Info)" to display a program detail.
- Press  (Volume key) to adjust volume.
- To set for audio or subtitle, tap  → "設定 (Settings)" → 音声・字幕 (Audio/Caption).

Searching for a program/content

You can search for programs/contents in the application with various methods.

Searching from program guide (Real Time)

- 1** From the NOTTV home screen, "番組表 (Program table)"
 - A Real Time program table appears. To view a Shift Time program table, tap "シフトタイム (Shift Time)".
 - Tapping a current broadcasting program switches channels.
 - Tap "全画面 (Full-screen)" to display the program table in full screen. Tap "簡易画面 (Simple screen)" to return to the original display.

Searching by specifying conditions

- 1** From the NOTTV home screen,  → "検索・ジャンル別 (Search/by category)"
- 2** Enter a keyword/tap an item you want to search for by category

Scheduling programs/contents reception

Scheduling Shift Time reception

- 1** From the NOTTV home screen, "番組表 (Program table)"
- 2** "シフトタイム (Shift Time)"
 - A list of scheduled programs/contents appears.
- 3** Tap a program/content you want to reserve
 - A program/content detail screen appears.
- 4** "予約する (Reserve)" → "1 回のみ予約する (Reserve only once)"/"シリーズ予約する (Reserve by series)"

Information

- Programs/contents may not be received in the following cases: when the terminal is off while a program/content is broadcasted, when the battery is low, when the terminal is in a poor reception area such as out of the Mobacas service area etc., when a microSD card is not inserted, when available memory space on the microSD card/system memory (phone) is low.
- Programs/contents temporarily saved in the microSD card or system memory (phone) can be watched/used only on the terminal.
- When expiration date has passed for programs/contents, they are automatically deleted from the microSD card or system memory (phone). You can also delete programs/contents manually before the expiration date.
- Programs/contents may be automatically reserved even when you have not reserved (自動予約 (Auto-reservation)).
- You can disable 自動予約 (Auto-reservation).
- Data may be complemented automatically using packet communication when contents are not completely received because of the reception status of broadcast wave etc. (自動補完 (Auto-complement)).
- You can set to disable 自動補完 (Auto-complement).

Scheduling watching/recording Real Time programs

- 1** From the NOTTV home screen, "番組表 (Program table)"
- 2** Touch and hold a program you want to reserve
- 3** "録画予約する (Reserve recording)"/"視聴予約する (Reserve watching)" → "1回のみ予約する (Reserve only once)"/"シリーズ予約する Reserve by series)"
 - You can record a current broadcasting program manually.
 - Tap "詳細を見る (See details)" to display program information, then tap "視聴予約する (Reserve watching)"/"録画予約する (Reserve recording)" to operate.

Information

- Program may not be watched/recorded in the following cases: when the terminal is off while the program is broadcast, when the battery is low, when the terminal is in a poor reception area such as out of the Mobacas service area etc., when a microSD card is not inserted, when available memory space on the microSD card/system memory (phone) is low.
- Program saved in the microSD card or system memory (phone) can be watched only on the terminal.
- Some programs may not be recorded.

Setting Mobacas

1 From the Home screen, "NOTTV"
→  → "設定 (Settings)"

2 Tap an item to be set

Item	Description
音声・字幕 (Audio/Caption)	
音声切替 (Audio switch)	Set for audio language and main/sub audio sound.
字幕表示切替 (Caption switch)	Set whether to display subtitles.
バックグラウンド再生 (Background play)	Keep playing in the background after closing the application.

Item	Description
シフトタイム (Shift Time)	
自動予約 (Auto-reservation)	Automatically reserve recommended Shift Time programs.
自動補完 (Auto-complement)	Automatically complement data not received using communication.
番組表 (Program table)	
番組表情報自動 取得 (Obtain program table information)	Set time zone for obtaining information of program table/contents list.
ステータスバー (Status bar)	
放送中番組の 表示 (Display broadcasting program)	Display broadcasting program information on the status bar.
新着情報の通 知 (New arrival notification)	Display new arrival of Shift Time/recording on the status bar.

Item	Description
ステータスバー (Status bar)	
お知らせ情報の通知 (Notification of notice)	Display notice from NOTTV on the status bar.
ペアレンタルコントロール (Parental control)	
視聴年齢制限 (Parental lock)	Set to restrict parental lock programs. • For the first activation, a password setting screen appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.
年齢設定 (Age setting)	Set age to restrict.
パスワード変更 (Change password)	Change password for parental lock.
ソーシャル (Social)	
Twitter連携解除 (Cancel Twitter link)	Set whether to cancel link with Twitter.

Item	Description
詳細設定 (Advanced settings)	Set for duplicative recording prevention, displaying Cookie or data broadcasting. 重複録画防止 (prevention of duplicative recording): Prevent from recording the same program several times when reserving by a series, keyword. ストレージ選択 (Select storage): Change location to save shift time programs or recorded programs.

TV (1 Seg)

1 Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices and enables these devices to receive data broadcasts in addition to video and audio broadcasts. In addition, interactive service using communication function of mobile devices and receiving detailed information are available.

For details on 1 Seg service, refer to the website below.

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english>

Notes on using 1 Seg

1 Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations), etc. Transmission charges are not incurred for receiving image, audio, and sound.

For details on NHK viewing fees, contact NHK.

The data broadcast area displays two types of information: "Data broadcasting" and "data broadcasting web site".

"Data broadcasting" information is carried in a broadcast wave, together with image, audio, and sound.

"Data broadcasting web site" information is used to access sites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station).

Packet communication charges are incurred when accessing a site such as a "data broadcasting web site" or others.

Some sites require information charges to use.

Airwaves

1 Seg is a broadcasting service that operates on radio waves (airwaves) different from those for the Xi service or FOMA service. Therefore, you cannot receive the 1 Seg service in locations that airwaves cannot reach or during hours when program is not available, regardless of whether you are outside of the Xi service or FOMA service area.

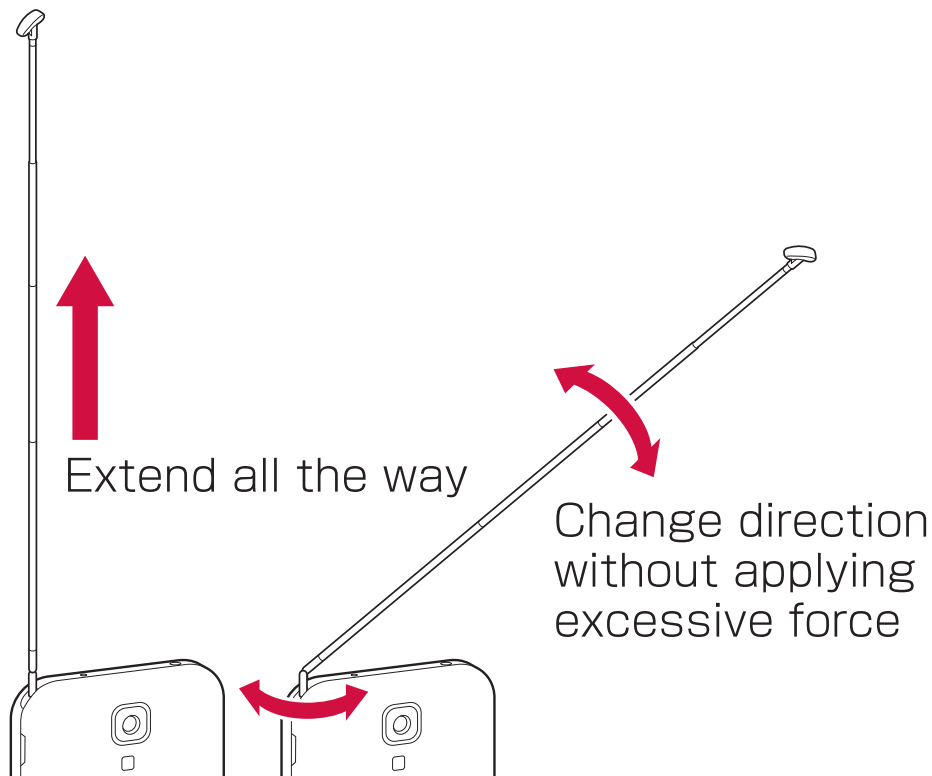
Even in areas where the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service is available, you may have poor or no reception in the following places:

- Places far away from a tower that transmits airwaves
- Places in a mountain area or behind a building where radio waves are blocked by land or structural features
- Inside a tunnel, underground, inner area of a building or other place where radio waves are weak or nonexistent

Fully extending the 1 Seg/ Mobacas antenna and moving to other location may improve signal reception.

1 Seg/Mobacas antenna

Do not change the direction of the antenna with excessive force.



Information

- When using the 1 Seg/Mobacas antenna, pull the antenna out fully. The antenna may be broken if excessive force is applied without fully pulled out.
- When storing the 1 Seg/Mobacas antenna, hold the root of the antenna and retract it until it stops. Do not retract the antenna by holding the tip.

Watching 1 Seg

1 From the Home screen, "Mobile TV"

- "Ch.list" tab on the operation screen (P.284) appears.
- When the first activation or if the channel area is not registered, tap "OK" and set channel area (P.293).

2 Tap preview image

- The watching screen (P.282) appears.

Information

- According to the airwave status, the images and sounds may be interrupted.
- Depending on the volume setting (P.405), sound may be reproduced even though the Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate) is set. In such a case, adjust volume with  (Volume key).

Transferring to Bluetooth headset

- 1** On the watching screen,  → "Transfer to BT headset"
 - If Bluetooth function is OFF, a notification for turning Bluetooth ON appears. Tap "OK" to turn ON.
- 2** Tap a device to connect
 - If the device is not visible, "Scan" → Tap the device to connect.
- 3** Enter pass code (PIN), if required → "OK"

Information

- Available only for SCMS-T-compatible Bluetooth headset.

Watching screen



① Image

- Channel can be switched by flicking to the left or right.
- Details of the program displays by touching and holding the image.

② Subtitle

-  → "Settings" → "Caption" → Tap "On" to show subtitles.

③ Broadcast data

④ Airwave status/Channel/Program name

⑤ Pop-up TV window

- Tap to switch to pop-up TV window. You can view 1 Seg while operating another application.

⑥ TV operation panel

- Channel can be switched with  / .
- "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears by tapping the number of the channel.
- Adjust the volume with  09.

⑦ Operation panel for broadcast data

- Adjust the cursor with  /  and tap "Select" to select an item. The broadcast data of the link displays.
- Tap "Back" to return to the previous linked program.

■ Key operations on viewing screen

- Lock/unlock the screen with  (Power/screen lock key).  is displayed while the screen is locked.
- Adjust the volume with  (Volume key).

■ Operations on the pop-up TV window

- Drag the pop-up TV window to move desired position.
- On the pop-up TV window, widen/narrow distance between 2 fingers to change the window size.
- Double-tap the pop-up TV window to return to the viewing screen.
- Tap the pop-up TV window → Tap  to exit 1 Seg.

Operation screen

1 On the watching screen, tap a channel number

2 Tap a tab at the top of the screen

Ch. list tab



Operation screen (Ch. list tab)

① Tab

- Switch the operating target by tapping the tab.

② Preview image

- The watching screen appears by tapping it.

③ Channel/Program name

④ Channel list

- Tapping a channel switches to the channel.
- Channel can be removed from the Channel list by touching and holding the channel → Tap "Delete" → "OK".

⑤ Program list

- The watching program list appears by tapping it.

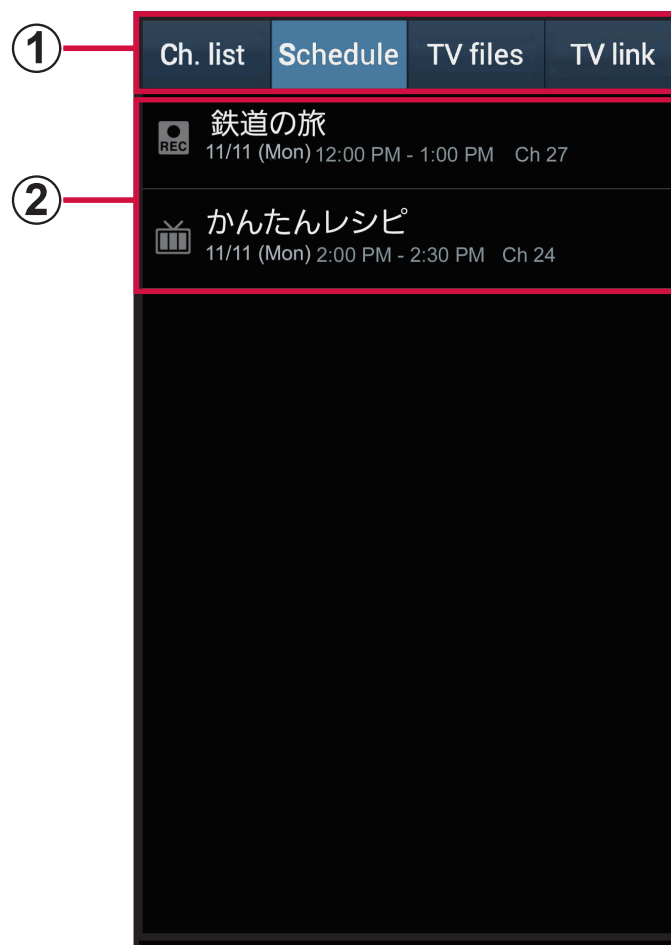
⑥ TV full view

- The watching screen appears by tapping it.

■ Key operations on Ch. list tab

- Adjust the volume with  (Volume key).

Schedule tab



Operation screen (Schedule tab)

① Tab

- Tap to switch tabs.

② Schedule list



: Recording schedule (including the completed schedule)



: Watching schedule (including the completed schedule)



: Failed recording schedule



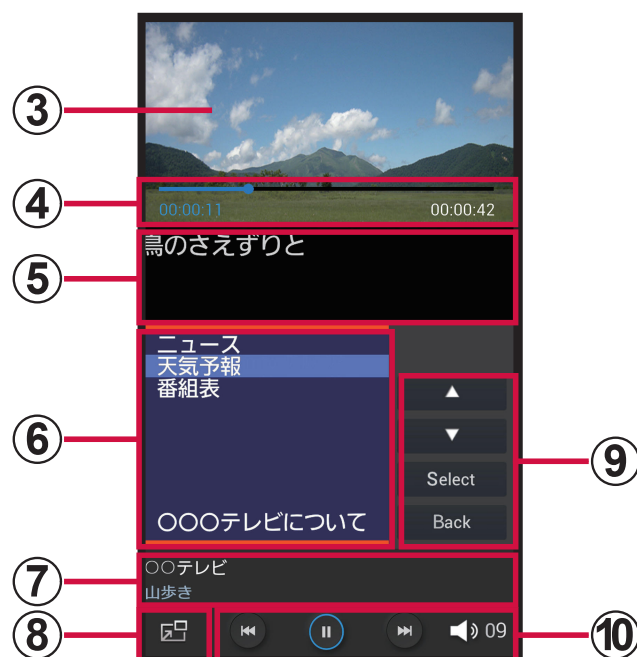
: Failed watching schedule

- Change the schedule by tapping the unexecuted schedule.
- Delete the schedule by touching and holding the unexecuted schedule → Tap "Delete" → "OK".
- Confirm the result or delete the schedule from the list by tapping the executed schedule.

TV files tab



Operation screen (TV files tab)



TV file playing screen

① Tab

- Tap to switch tabs.

② TV file list

- Tap a TV file to play.
- Tap captured image to display the image.

- Alternatively, touch and hold a TV file/captured image → Tap "Delete" → "OK" to delete the TV file/captured image.

③ Image

- Flick left or right to switch TV files.

④ Play time, slider

- Tap video screen to display.
- Change any time point of a TV file to be viewed by dragging .

⑤ Caption

⑥ Broadcast data

⑦ Channel/Program name

⑧ Pop-up TV window

- Tap to switch to pop-up TV window. You can view 1 Seg while operating another application.

⑨ Broadcast data operation panel

- Adjust the cursor with  /  and select an item with "Select". The broadcast data of the link displays.
- Tap "Back" to return to the previous linked program.

⑩ Play operation panel

- TV file can be changed with  / .
- Play/pause the TV file with  / .
- Adjust the volume with .
- Switch between captured images with  / .

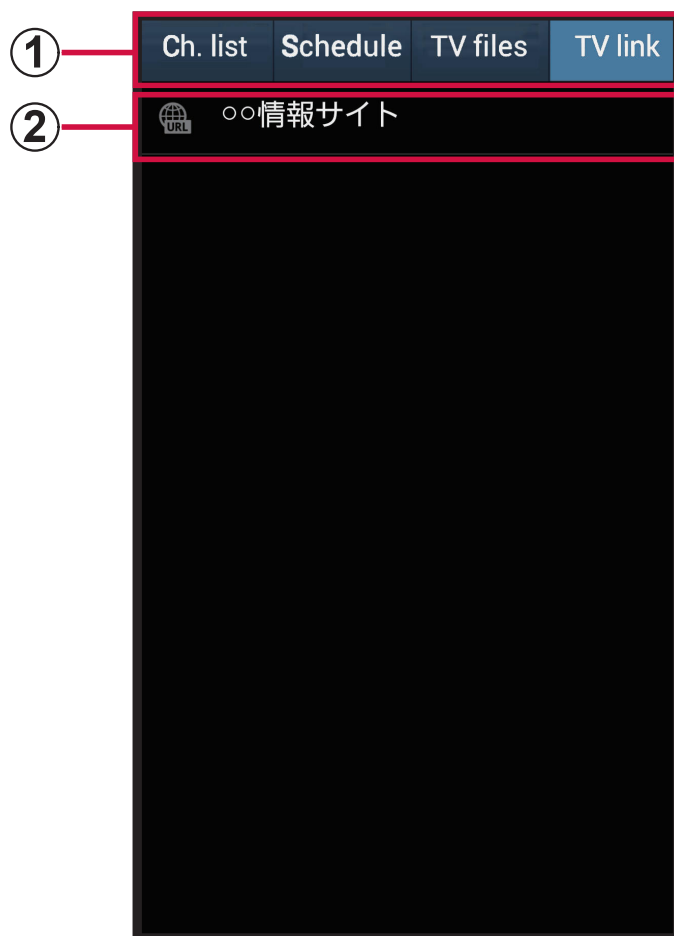
■ Key operations on the playing TV file screen

- Lock/unlock the screen with  (Power/screen lock key).  is displayed while the screen is locked.
- Adjust the volume with  (Volume key).

■ Operations on the pop-up TV window

For operations on pop-up TV window, see P.283.

TV link tab



Operation screen (TV link tab)

① **Tab**

- Tap to switch tabs.

② **TV link**

- Connect to registered site (P.294).

Recording 1 Seg

1 On the watching screen,  → "Record"

- While recording,  appears on the upper left of TV screen.
- To stop recording, tap "Stop".

Information

- According to the airwave status, the images and sounds may be interrupted.
- During recording, channel cannot be changed.
- If you activate any other application during recording, the program may not be recorded correctly.

Playing recorded programs

1 On the watching screen,  → "TV files"

2 Tap a program to be played

Capturing watching screen

- 1 On the watching screen,  → "Capture"
 - Captured images can be checked in "TV files" tab on the operation screen.

Reserving to record or watch 1 Seg

Reserving from channel schedule

- 1 On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2 "CH. schedule" → Tap a program to be scheduled
 - Channel can be changed by tapping a channel name on the top of the screen.
 - Detail of the program can be confirmed by tapping the program.
- 3 "Schedule" → "Schedule to record"/
"Schedule to watch"

Scheduling manually

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2** "Schedule" tab
- 3**  → "Schedule manually"
- 4** Enter each items on New program reservation screen
- 5** Tap 

Deleting reservations

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2** "Schedule" tab
- 3** Touch and hold the reservation to be deleted
- 4** "Delete" → "OK"

Setting channels

Setting area information

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2**  → "Set area information" → Select the area to be registered
- 3** Select regions → Select a prefecture → Select local area
 - Channels are searched and the selected area is registered to the channel list.
- 4** "OK"

Switching area information

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2**  → "Change area" → Select an area to be switched
 - When the area to be switched to is not registered to the channel list, set area information (P.293).

Deleting area information

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2**  → "Set area information" → Touch and hold an area to be deleted
- 3** "Reset"

Using TV link

Registering TV link

- 1** Operate broadcast data and select an item to be registered to TV link
 - The registration method of TV link varies depending on each program.

Information

- TV link may not be registered depending on each link.

Displaying TV link

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2** "TV link" tab
- 3** Select a TV link → "OK"
 - Connect to the registered website.

Deleting TV link

- 1** On the watching screen, tap a channel number
 - "Ch. list" tab of the operation screen appears.
- 2** "TV link" tab
- 3** Touch and hold the TV link to be deleted
- 4** "Delete" → "OK"

Setting Mobile TV

1 On the watching screen,  → "Settings"

2 Set required items

Item	Description
Caption	Set whether to display subtitles.
Frame interpolation	Set whether to perform frame interpolation.
SoundAlive	Select audio effects from 4 options.
Audio language	Set sound to be heard for sound multiplex programs.
Save to	Set a saving location of recorded or captured data.
TV Off timer	Set time before stopping Mobile TV automatically.

Item	Description
Broadcast data	
Set recording	Set to record image and text or only image.
Image location	Set an image saving location.
Notify connection	Set whether to check communication connection.
Location	Set whether to check location information.
Manufacture number	Set whether to notify serial number.
Delete station data	Delete broadcasting data.

Camera

Copyrights and portrait rights

Avoid copyright infringements when you handle photos taken with your terminal, e.g. copy/alter/edit except for the purpose of personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. Note that capturing or recording a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition may be prohibited even if for personal use.

If you cause the public any trouble using the terminal, you may be punished under law or regulations (for example, nuisance prevention ordinance).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before using Camera

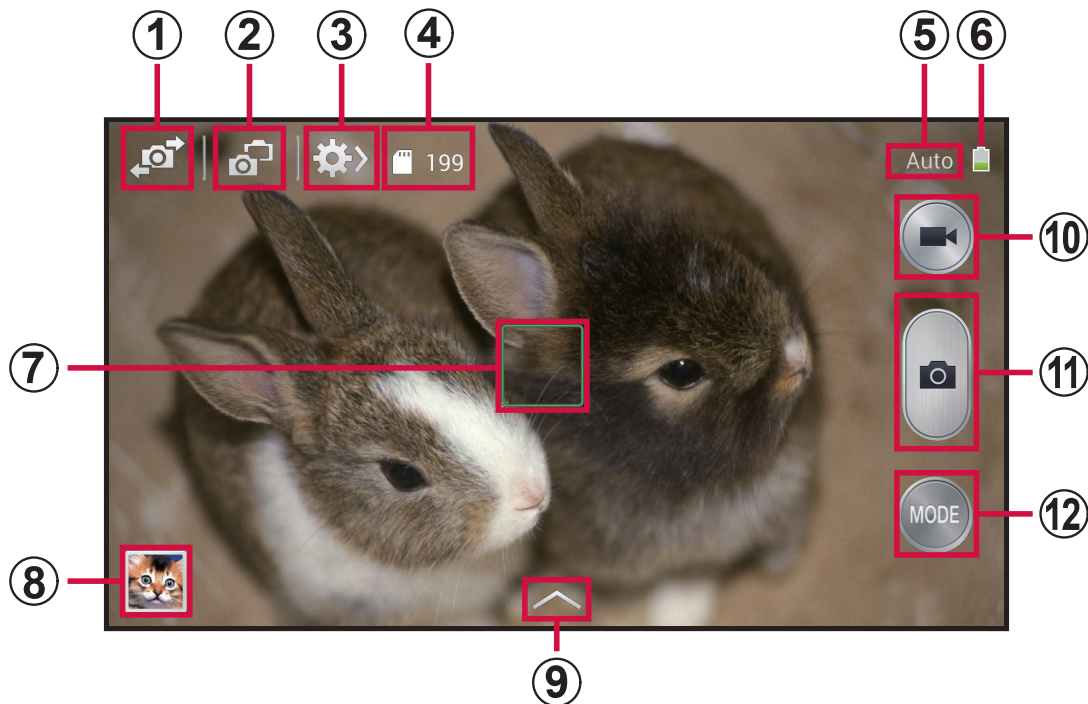
- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some dots and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Images shot under very low light intensity contain increased noise such as white lines or random dots, but it is not a malfunction.
- Note that a stripe pattern may appear on the screen when Camera is activated, but it is not a malfunction.

- Still images or videos shot by Camera may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness.
- When attempting to take a photo of a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp, images may become dark or degraded.
- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clear still images/videos. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants on the lens before taking photos.
- When shooting, hold the terminal firmly with your hand not to move. Moving the terminal when shooting may cause blur shot images.
- Do not cover the lens with your finger or hair when shooting.
- Using Camera consumes much power of battery. Note that if you shoot with low battery, the screen may become dark or a shot image may be blurred.
- If you use Camera for a long time such as continuous shooting of still images and long-time shooting of videos, the terminal may become hot and Camera may be terminated automatically, but it is not a malfunction. Please use after a while.
- Do not remove microSD card or battery pack forcibly immediately after capturing. It may not save correctly or may cause data corruption. Before removing the microSD card, perform "Unmount SD card" (P.449) and remove the back cover.
- Even in Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate), shutter sound for still image shooting, focus sound and start/stop sound of shooting video sounds.

Shooting screen

1 From the Home screen, → "Camera"

- For the first time activation, a confirmation screen for saving location appears when a microSD card is installed. Confirm the contents and tap "Cancel"/"OK".



Still image/video shooting screen

- ① **Switch between In-camera and Out-camera**
- ② **Dual camera**
 - Tap to shoot still images/videos using both of Out-camera and In-camera.
 - When "Video size" is set to "1920 × 1080 (16:9)", video can be recorded for up to 5 minutes. For other size, video can be recorded up to 10 minutes.
- ③ **Quick settings**
 - Tap to display the following icon menu.
 -  : Display the setting menu → P.303
 -  : Switch OFF/ON/Auto of Flash
 -  : Set ON/OFF of Smart stabilization → P.304

 : Set ON/OFF of Voice control (when "Voice control" (P.423) is OFF, display the settings of Voice control)

 : Set Recording mode → P.317

 : Set sharing function → P.313

④ **Saving destination (microSD card), savable number of images**

- Appears when a saving location is set to microSD card.
- Savable number of images is shown when the savable number is 300 or less.
- Savable number of images is estimate value. Number may not change even after shooting.
- Depending on settings, an icon notifying the settings appears at the left of saving destination icon.

⑤ **Current mode**

- Currently set mode appears.

⑥ **Remaining battery level**

-  appears when battery level is less than 30% and  appears while charging battery.

⑦ **Focus**

⑧ **Thumbnail**

- Tap to activate Gallery.

⑨ **Effect setting menu**

- Tap to display menu of effect. You can download effects.

⑩ **Shutter (video shooting)**

⑪ **Shutter (still image shooting)**

⑫ **Shooting mode menu → P.307**

Information

- If no operation is performed with Camera activated for approximately 2 minutes, Camera ends.
- "Beauty face", "Best photo" and "Best face" in Mode menu are compatible with the face detection function.
- On the still image/video shooting screen,  → Tap "Edit quick settings" to edit the menu for displaying on the quick settings.

Setting before shooting

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Camera"
- 2** On the still image/video shooting screen,  → "Settings" → Set required items
 - Some items may not be set together.
 - Alternatively, on the still image/video shooting screen,  → Tap  to make setting before shooting.
 - Tap  tab for still image,  tab for video, or  tab for common settings of still image/video.

tab

Item	Description
Photo size	Set shooting size of still image.
Burst shot	Set still image continuously. • By setting Burst shot to "On" and touch and hold the shutter to shoot up to 20 images. All shot images are saved.
Tap to take pics	Tap the screen to shoot still images.

Item	Description
Face detection	Detect face of object and shoot still image. Depending on the angle, size, expression, lighting, accessories, etc. of the face, face detection may not work properly.
Metering	Set metering method for still image shooting method.
ISO	Set ISO sensitivity for still image shooting.
Smart stabilization	Set whether to adjust camera so that bright and clear photos can be taken without flash even in a dark place.
Save as	Set a method for saving images when shooting with the shooting mode set to "Rich tone (HDR)".

Item	Description
Video size	Set shooting size for video.
Video stabilization	Enable/disable Anti-Shake for video shooting.
Audio zoom	Set whether to pick up sound around the zoomed object when recording video.

Item	Description
Location tag	Set whether to add location information. • To receive GPS signal correctly, do not use in a poor reception area. → P.341 • When uploading shot still images, added location information may be tracked by third parties. To avoid leaking location information, set to "Off".
Review	Set whether to display the preview after shooting.
Volume key	Set operation by pressing  (Volume key) to "The zoom key"/"The camera key"/"The record key".
Timer	Set self-timer.
White balance	Select lighting condition on shooting to correct color shade.
Exposure value	Set exposure correction.
Guidelines	Set whether to display grid on the shooting screen.
Flash	Switch Flash to Off/On/Auto.

Item	Description
Voice control	Set whether to use Voice control.
Contextual filename	Set whether to name files automatically.
Save as flipped	Mirror-reverse and save shot still images/video. • Switch to in-camera to set.
Storage	Select a saving location of shot still image/video.
Reset	Reset camera settings.

3 After setting, tap somewhere on the screen or tap 

Switching shooting mode

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Camera"
- 2** On the still image/video shooting screen,  → **Select shooting mode**
 - Tap  /  to change view of shooting mode menu.
 - While the shooting mode menu is displayed, tap  to set the shooting mode to "Auto".

Item	Description
Auto	Adjust lithographic exposure automatically to optimize color tone and brightness.

Item	Description
Beauty face	When shooting portrait, correct for skin tone to make it beauty.
Best photo	Shoot 8 still images by 1 shutter. You can select images to save from the shot still images. • Storage for the shot images are switched to "Device". • Touch and hold an image to save from among the 8 thumbnails to display  → Tap "Save"/.
Best face	Shoot 5 still images by 1 shutter. You can select a best face per detected object and save a combined image. • After shooting, tap scanned object → Tap Best face image from the thumbnail to display  → Repeat the same operation for all the objects → Tap "Save"/.

Item	Description
Sound & shot	Shoot a still image including ambient sound recorded data. • Sound data can be recorded for up to 9 seconds after shooting. If you perform anything for 9 seconds or tap , recording stops. • In the Gallery,  appears on each saved still image.
Drama	Shoot moving object with multiple exposure and compose to 1 still image to save. • Tap "Save"/ to save still images. • You can restore/delete thumbnails to be displayed when the edit screen appears. • Fix the camera to a place and point an object moving in a direction. Background should be immobile. • If the colors of the background and object are similar, shooting may fail. • Too small, too large or too long objects (buses, trains, etc.) may be difficult to be shot.

Item	Description
Animated photo	Shoot continuous still images to compose moving images for up to 5 seconds. • Edit screen appears after shooting. Tap "Save"/ to save still images. • On the edit screen, "Direction" → Select how to change motion of images. • On the edit screen, "Trim" → Drag  → Tap "Done" /  to save cropped still image. • On the edit screen, "Freeze"/ → Drag an area not to move the selected area. To edit fixed area, from the edit screen, tap "Animate"/ → Drag the selected area in Freeze.
Golf	Shoot someone's golf swing. • Press the shutter button after focusing the object at the center to detect golf swing for 30 seconds. • In portrait view, golf mode is not available.
Rich tone (HDR)	Shoot in HDR (High Dynamic Range) mode.

Item	Description
Eraser	Shoot 5 still images by 1 shutter. Remove unnecessary object from shot still image to save best shot still image. • Edit screen appears after shooting. Tap "Save"/ to save still images. • On the edit screen, tap "Show moving objects"/ to show deleted object in pink and it can be restored/deleted each time you tap. Tap "Hide moving objects"/ to return to the edit screen. • Make sure to hold the terminal still when shooting. • If the colors of the background and object are similar, part of the object may be detected or errors may occur when deleting the object. • When an object moves slightly or widely, deletion may fail. • When lots of moving objects exist, part of objects may be detected.

Item	Description
Panorama	Move the terminal horizontally or vertically to shoot panorama photo. • Slowly move the camera in a direction not to get the blue frame out of the white guideline when shooting. • Shooting objects in front of a plain colored wall or in empty space may fail.
Surround shot	Move the terminal all-round to shoot spherical panorama photo. • Put  in  and fix the camera until  changes into blue to shoot photo in front. After shooting photo in front, refer to  and move the terminal to the direction you want to shoot for shooting surrounding area. • Shooting objects in front of a plain colored wall or in empty space may fail. • Tap  in the Gallery after shooting to play the shot panorama photo.
Sports	Use for shooting objects which move fast.

Setting sharing function

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Camera"
- 2 On the still image/video shooting screen,  → 
- 3 Tap an item you want to use

Item	Description
Off	Shoot normally.
Share shot	Use Wi-Fi Direct function to send shot still image to the other device. • If Share shot screen appears, tap "Easily connect via NFC"/"Wi-Fi Direct settings" to set the party to share with.
Buddy photo share	When a person matching to a registered personal information (face tag) is included in a shot still image, send the still image as mail attachment to the person. • To use the function, set up email account beforehand. → P.221
ChatON photo share	Send shot still images to ChatON to members.

Item	Description
Remote viewfinder	Share images in the terminal with the other Remote viewfinder compatible device connected via Wi-Fi Direct function, and control the shutter of the terminal remotely by tapping / on the other device. • Tapping / on the connected other device shoots a still image/video. • When the remote viewfinder screen appears, tap "Easily connect via NFC"/"Wi-Fi Direct settings" to set the party to share with.

Shooting still images

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Camera"
 - Still image/video shooting screen appears.
- 2** Point Camera at an object
 - You can adjust zooming by pressing  (Volume key) or widening/narrowing your fingers distance on the display.
- 3** Tap 
 - Shutter sound sounds and then an image is shot.
 - The shot still images are automatically saved.
 - Touch and hold  when shooting to keep fixing the focus on an object in auto-focus frame. Release your finger to shoot. However, if "Burst shot" (P.303) is set to "On", this function is not available.

Information

- Shot still image is saved in JPEG format.

Shooting videos

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Camera"
 - Still image/video shooting screen appears.

- 2** Point Camera at an object → 
 - Start sound sounds and shooting video starts.
 - You can adjust zooming by pressing  (Volume key) or widening/narrowing your fingers distance on the display.
 - Tap  to shoot still images while shooting video.
 - To pause the shooting, tap . Tap  during pause to resume shooting.

- 3** To stop shooting, 
 - Stop sound sounds and video is saved automatically.

Information

- Before shooting video, check if the memory space is enough.

Switching recording mode

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Camera"
- 2 On the still image/video shooting screen,  → 
- 3 Tap an item you want to use

Item	Description
Normal	Shoot normally.
Slow motion	Record in 120fps for playback in slow motion. • When Slow motion is set, icon of Quick settings changes to  and  appears on the right side. Tap  to select a recording speed.
Fast motion	Record for playback in fast motion. • When Fast motion is set, icon of Quick settings changes to  and  appears on the right side. Tap  to select a recording speed.
Smooth motion	Record in 60 fps for more photographically and smoothly play. • When Smooth motion is set, icon of Quick settings changes to .

Gallery

You can view or organize still images/videos saved to the terminal or microSD card. Supported format are as follows. However, even if in the following file format, some images or some videos may not be displayed/played.

Type	Format*
Still image	JPEG, PNG, GIF, BMP, WBMP, AGIF
Video	MP4, M4V, 3GP, 3G2, WMV, ASF, AVI, FLV, MKV, ISMV, WEBM, TS

* DivX is not supported.
To play files in DivX format, install a compatible application.

1 From the Home screen, → "Gallery"

- An album list screen appears.
- Tap  to create an album.
- Tap  to activate Camera.

2 Tap an album

- A data list screen appears.

3 Tap data

- When any icons are not displayed, tap the screen to display. Displayed icons vary by displayed data.

Item	Description
	Connect to DLNA device to display still images. → P.486
	Share data using online services, send data via Bluetooth or attaching to mail, or use data on other applications.
	Edit still image data (rotation, trimming, color, effect, etc).
	Edit video data (trimming).
 *	Download data in an online storage to the terminal.
	Delete data.

* Appears only when the synchronization setting for online storage is available.

Viewing still image

- 1 On the data list screen, tap a still image to display
 - The still image appears.
 - To switch still images, scroll the screen to the left or right.

Playing video

- 1 On the data list screen, tap a video to play
- 2  → Select an application → "Always" / "Just once"
 - Playing starts.
 - For icons on the screen and operation instructions when selecting "Media Player", see "Using Media Player" (P.326).
 - For icons on the screen and operation instructions when selecting "Video Player", see "Playing video" (P.328).

Menu of Gallery

When you tap  on the album list screen/data list screen, the following items appear.

□ Album list screen

Item	Description
Select album	Tap album to select multiple items, and then operate collectively. • To select all albums, tap "XX selected" → "Select all". • Tap  to share album using online services, send data via Bluetooth or attaching to mail, or use data on other applications. • Tap  to delete album. • Tap  to start or set slideshow.
Slideshow	Start slideshow or set slideshow.
Content to display	Select location to save contents to show in the Gallery.
Scan for nearby devices	Scan DLNA devices. → P.486 • Appears when the terminal is connected to Wi-Fi network.

Item	Description
Settings	
Sync only via Wi-Fi	Set whether to sync contents only when being connected via Wi-Fi.
Tag buddy	Set whether to display tagged information such as weather information, place, and date overlapping with an image.
Face tag	Set whether to display personal information (face tag) that is registered to the phonebook. • Face tag can be used only for still images.
Auto play sound	Set whether to play sound when displaying still images shot with Sound & shot mode.
Help	Display Help of Gallery.

Information

- When you set an online account or cloud account to the terminal, tap "Settings" to display the account name and you can set synchronization etc.
- Tag buddy information is only shown to the images shot by the camera with "Location tag" (P.306) ON.

□ Data list screen

Item	Description
Select item	Tap data to select multiple items, and then operate collectively. • To select all data, tap "XX selected" → "Select all". • Tap  to share data using online services, send data via Bluetooth or attaching to mail, or use data on other applications. • Tap  to delete data. • Tap  to start or set the slide show, operate such as copy, move, rotate or create story album, or check data details.
Slideshow	Start slideshow or set slideshow.
Create collage	Select still images to create a collage.
Create a story album	Select still images to create a story album.
Create video clip	Select still images or videos to create a video album.
Hide items	Hide selected items.
Show hidden items	Show hidden items. • Tap an item to display →  → Tap "Show items" to display.
Settings	→ P.322

□ Data display screen

Type	File format
Favorite	Add to favorite.
Slideshow	Start slideshow or set slideshow.
Photo frame*	Set/edit Photo Frame.
Photo note*	Add memo on the reverse side of still image.
Signature*	Add signature to a still image.
Copy to clipboard*	Copy a still image to clipboard.
Print*	Print still images using a compatible printer. → P.485
Rename	Change a file name.
Buddy photo share*	Detect object from a still image and send email if the object is registered to the phonebook.
Rotate left*	Rotate a still image 90-degree in counterclockwise direction.
Rotate right*	Rotate a still image 90-degree in clockwise direction.
Crop*	Crop a still image.
Edit weather tag*	Edit weather information tagged to still images. • Appears only for still images with Location tag.

Type	File format
Get directions*	Search and display a place where the still image is shot if a map application is installed. • Appears only for still images with Location tag.
Set as*	Register a still image to Phonebook/Contacts/Wallpaper.
Details	Display details of data.
Settings	→ P.323

* Appears only when still image is displayed.

Using Media Player

You can play music or videos saved on the terminal or microSD card.

Available file formats for playing are as follows. However, even if in the following file format, some songs and videos may not be played.

Type	File format*
Music	MP3, M4A, 3GA, AAC, OGG, OGA, WAV, WMA, AMR, AWB, FLAC, ISMA, MID, MIDI, XMF, IMY, RTTTL, RTX, OTA
Video	MP4, M4V, 3GP, 3G2, WMV, ASF, AVI, FLV, MKV, ISMV, WEBM, TS

* DivX and AC3 are not supported.
To play files in DivX or AC3 format, install a compatible application.

1 From the Home screen, → "Media Player"

- For the first activation, Introduction of Media Player appears. Tap "使い方の説明を読む (Read how to use)" to check how to use it. If you do not want to read description, tap "説明を読まず利用する (Use anyway)".

2 Select a category at the bottom of the screen

- Result corresponding to tapping tab appears.

- If you tap "dmarket" → "Search in d music"/"Search in d video"/"Search in d anime store", you can purchase contents such as music, videos, etc.

3 Tap a music or a video to play

- Playing music or video starts.

Item	Description
	Indicate the current play position. Drag left and right to change the play position.
 *1 /  *2	Display data list.
 *1 /  *1	Set whether to switch to portrait/landscape view according to orientation of the terminal automatically (switch automatically OFF/ON).
 / 	Play/pause.
 / 	Tap to rewind/fast forward.
 / 	Tap to go back to the beginning of data or the previous data/skip to the next data.
 *2 /  *2 /  *2	Set repeat mode (No repeat/All repeat/Repeat the track).
 *2 /  *2	Set shuffle function (Shuffle OFF/ON).
	Display the volume level. Drag left or right to adjust the volume.

- *1 Appears only for playing video screen.
- *2 Appears only for playing music screen.

Information

- When the terminal connects to an external device with HDMI cable, audio effect settings of Media Player cannot apply.

Playing video

You can play videos saved on your terminal or microSD card.

Available file formats for playing are as follows. However, even if in the following file format, some videos may not be played.

File format*
MP4, M4V, 3GP, 3G2, WMV, ASF, AVI, FLV, MKV, ISMV, WEBM, TS

- * DivX is not supported.
To play files in DivX format, install a compatible application.

1 From the Home screen, → "Video"

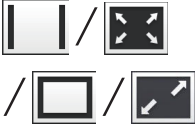
- Video list on the "Personal" tab screen appears. On the "Personal" tab, videos saved on the terminal/microSD card are listed.
- Tap "Download" tab to display a list of videos downloaded from MOVIE STORE in Samsung Hub.
- When the terminal is connected to Wi-Fi network and DLNA devices are detected, "Nearby devices" tab appears. Tap the tab

to display detected devices. Tap a device to display video list screen.

2 Tap a video

- A video playing screen appears and playing starts.
- When the tab is displayed, tap "Nearby devices" tab → Select a device to connect → Tap a video to display video playing screen and playing video starts.
- The following icons appear when tapping the screen.

Item	Description
	Play a video being connected to a DLNA device. → P.486
	Move to the previous/next frame. * Appears when pausing a video by tapping  on the playing screen → "Settings" and set "Capture" to On.
	Shoot still image from video. To check shot image, from the Home screen, tap  → "Gallery" → "Screenshots". * Appears when operating from the playback screen,  → "Settings" then set "Capture" to On.
	Adjust the volume.
	Switch vertical/horizontal display. * Appears when "Auto rotate screen" (P.82) is set to OFF.

Item	Description
	Adjust video playback speed. * Appears when tapping  on the playing screen → "Settings" and set "Play speed" to On.
	Indicate the current play position. Drag left and right to change the play position.
	Switch view size of video.
	Decrease the playing screen size. You can play videos while operating other applications. • Drag the small play window to move to desired position. • On the small play window, widen/narrow the distance between 2 fingers to change the window size. • Tap the small play window → Play/pause the play. • Double-tap the small play window to return to the playing screen. • Tap the small play window → Tap  to end the play. * This function is available only when playing video with "Video".
	Play/pause.

Item	Description
	Tap to go back to the top of the data or skip to the next data. Touch and hold to rewind/fast forward.
	Indicate that the terminal is locked and it does not operate by tapping the screen. Press  on the playing screen to lock/unlock.

Information

- Tap  while playing video, "Press the back key again to return to previous screen" appears. Tap  with message displayed to return to video list.

Menu of Video

When you tap  on the video list screen/play screen, the following items appear.

□ Video list screen

Item	Description
Sign in	Sign in to Samsung account.
Scan for nearby devices	Scan DLNA devices. → P.486 Appears when the terminal connected to Wi-Fi network.
Sort by	Change order in list.
View as	Change the style of list display.

Item	Description
Share via	Share videos in online service or send via Bluetooth or by mail attachment etc.
Delete	Delete videos.
Edit	Use video editor to edit a video. • If the video editor download screen opens, follow the onscreen instructions.
Auto play next	Set whether to automatically play all videos.
Information	Display Samsung Hub information.
Settings	Check saving location setting and Samsung Hub information.
Help	Display Help of Samsung Hub.

□ Play screen

Item	Description
Share via	Share videos using online services, send data via Bluetooth or attaching to mail.
Chapter preview	Display chapters in thumbnail view.
Edit	Crop video data or edit using video editor.
Via Bluetooth	Output voice sound to Bluetooth device.

Item	Description
Video auto off	Set time duration for ending playback automatically.
Settings	Make settings for Play speed, SoundAlive, etc.
Details	Display details of data.

Playing music

You can play music saved on your terminal or microSD card.

Available file formats for playing are as follows. However, even if in an available file format, some tune may not be played.

File format*
MP3, M4A, 3GA, AAC, OGG, OGA, WAV, WMA, AMR, AWB, FLAC, ISMA, MID, MIDI, XMF, IMY, RTTTL, RTX, OTA

* AC3 is not supported.
To play files in AC3 format, install a compatible application.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Music"

- For the first activation, Data list in "Songs" tab screen appears.

2 Tap a tab at the top of the screen → Tap data you want to play

- Select an album or artist on each tab except "Songs" tab, the data list appears. Tap a data to start playback.

- When the terminal is connected to Wi-Fi network and DLNA devices are detected, "Nearby devices" tab appears. Tap the tab to display detected devices. Tap a device to display data list screen.
- Tap a jacket photo/ shown at the bottom left of the data list during playback, playback screen appears and the following operations become available.

Item	Description
	Play music being connected to a DLNA device. → P.486
	Adjust the volume. • Tap  to set SoundAlive.
	Set shuffle function (Shuffle ON/OFF).
	Add music to "Favorite".
	Set repeat mode (All repeat/Repeat the track/No repeat).
	Indicate the current play position. Drag left and right to change the play position.
	Display the data list.
	Return to the data list screen.
	Play/pause.
	Tap to skip to top of data or previous/next data. Touch and hold to rewind/fast forward.

Information

- When Stereo Headset with Microphone (sample) is connected (P.170), press switch to activate "Music" and play music. While the "Music" is activated, you can switch play/pause each time you press the switch. Volume can be adjusted with the volume key.
- Even when the screen lock is set during music play, the play continues. To operate, press  to display the lock screen and use "Music" widget. If playing music in the background, open the Notification panel to play music/pause music/skip to the next or previous track.

Creating playlist

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Music" → "Playlists" tab
- 2**  → "Create playlist"
- 3** Enter a playlist name → "OK"
- 4** "Add music"
 - Song list appears.
- 5** Mark a song to add → "Done"
 - Song is added to created playlist.

Editing playlist

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Music" → "Playlists" tab
- 2** Tap a playlist you want to edit
 - The contents of the playlist appear.
- 3** Edit playlist
 - Tap  → Tap a song you want to add → "Done" to add songs to a playlist.
 -  → Tap "Edit title" to edit playlist name.
 - Touch and hold a song → Tap "Remove" to delete a song from playlist.

Menu of Music

When you tap  on the data list/playing music screen, the following items appear.

□ Data list screen

Item	Description
Add to playlist	Add a song to the playlist.
Create playlist	Create a new playlist.
Via Bluetooth	Connect to a Bluetooth device to play.
Delete	Delete songs.
Edit title	Edit playlist name.
Thumbnail view/ List view	Switch view type of songs.
Search	Search a song.

Item	Description
Scan for nearby devices	Scan DLNA devices. → P.486 Appears when the terminal connected to Wi-Fi network.
Settings	Set SoundAlive or playing speed etc. When "Smart volume" is enabled, louder sound than set volume may be heard. Do not listen to music at full blast for a long time. Doing so may cause hearing loss.
End	End playing music.

* Available functions vary by screen you selected.

□ Play screen

Item	Description
Via Bluetooth	Play a song connecting to a Bluetooth device.
Play via Group Play	Use Group Play to share music.
Add to playlist	Add a song to the playlist.
Set as	Set a song to "Phone ringtone", "Caller ringtone", "Alarm tone".

Item	Description
Settings	Set SoundAlive, Play speed, etc. When "Smart volume" is enabled, louder sound than set volume may be heard. Do not listen to music at full blast for a long time. Doing so may cause hearing loss.
Details	Display detail information of song.
End	End playing music.

* Displayed items vary by file formats to be played.

GPS/Navigation

Enabling location information

If you use an application that uses location information, you need to enable GPS function in advance. You can set for detecting location information more accurately using Wi-Fi/Mobile network or the motion sensor.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Location services"
- 2** "Access to my location" → "Agree" → "Agree"
- 3** Mark a detection method
 - Tap  of "Location log" to save detected location information log.
 - Tap "My places" to save favorite places (Home, Office, Car) to use services requiring location information.

Item	Description
Use GPS satellites	Detect more accurate location information. However, the terminal consumes much power of battery.
Use wireless networks	Set whether to identify location information using Wi-Fi or mobile network.

Precautions on using GPS

- Use the GPS system with great care. DOCOMO is not liable for any damage caused by abnormality of the system.
- Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities for any purely economic loss including those due to missing a chance to check the measurement (communication) results because of external factors (including the running out of the battery), such as a failure, malfunction, or any other problems of the terminal or the power failure.
- You cannot use the terminal as a navigation device for an aircraft, vehicle, and person. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss while performing a navigation using the location information.
- You cannot use the terminal as a high-accuracy measurement GPS. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss due to a deviation of the location information.
- GPS is a service operated by the USA Department of Defense, so the GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degraded, radio wave suspended, etc.) for reasons of US national security. And, wave conditions differ by satellite locations; therefore, positioning operations in the same location under the same environmental conditions may not yield the same result.

- Some wireless communications products (mobile phone, data detectors and some others) block satellite signals and also cause instability of signal reception.
- Some map displays based on location information (latitude/longitude information) may be not accurate due to some countries' or regions' regulations.

■ **Where radio waves are difficult to receive**

Note that radio waves may not be received or it may be difficult to receive radio waves in the following conditions, since GPS uses radio waves from a satellite.

- Inside or immediately under a building
- Inside a basement or tunnel, and below the ground or water
- Inside a bag or box
- Building area or residential area
- Inside or under a thick covering of trees
- Near a high-voltage cable
- In a car, inside a train compartment
- Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
- When there are obstructions (people or objects) near the terminal

Using Google Maps

By using Google Maps, you can search for the current location or other locations, or obtain guide information to destination.

- To use Google Maps, enable data connection (LTE/3G/GPRS) or connect to Wi-Fi.
- Google Maps does not cover the whole world or region.

Opening Google Maps

1 From the Home screen, → "Maps"

- For the first activation, "Welcome to Google Maps" screen appears. Confirm the contents and then tap "Accept & continue".
- When "Improve your location" screen appears, tap "Enable" to set location services.

2 Enter area name etc. in the Search box

Searching direction by Google Maps

Use the "Directions" function of Google Maps to search the route by car, by train or on foot.

1 From the Home screen, → "Maps"

2 → Tap the locomotion strategy (/ /) icon

3 Enter the place name in "Choose destination..." field

- To change the start point, tap "My Location" field to enter name of place, or select from "More from your history" field to specify.

4 Tap a route

Searching spots in the area

Search restaurants, sightseeing spots, etc. in the current location area using Google Maps.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Maps"
- 2 Tap search box → "Explore"/"Services"
- 3 Tap a category you want to search
→ Tap target information from the search result
 - Alternatively, enter a category in the search box to search spots in the area.

Clock

You can use Alarm, World Clock, Stopwatch or Timer.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Clock"
- 2 Tap a tab at top of the screen
 - Tapping switches screen of each function.

Using Alarm

- 1** On the "Alarm" screen, "Create alarm"
- 2** Set time, repeat, alarm type, Alarm tone, volume, Location alarm, Snooze, Smart alarm, Name → "Save"
- 3** To stop alarm, drag  to the outside of the displayed circle
 - When snooze is set, drag  to the outside of the displayed circle, then alarm sounds again after elapse of set time.

Information

- Snooze is a function which stops the alarm and sets it to ring again at a short time later.
- To delete registered alarm, on the "Alarm" screen, tap  → "Delete" → Mark an alarm to delete → Tap "Delete". Alternatively, touch and hold an alarm → Tap "Delete".
- To make the set alarm OFF, tap  (Green)/ (Yellow) to switch to  (Gray).
- To set an alarm sound or vibration when the terminal is in Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate), on the "Alarm" screen, tap  → "Settings" → Set items.
- On the "Alarm" screen,  → Mark "Voice control" to use voice control. (If "Voice control" (P.423) is turned off, voice control setting appears.)

Using World clock

You can check date and time of registered to country/region by a list.

1 On the "World clock" screen, "Add city"

2 Tap a country/region to register

To search by city/country name

In search box, enter city/country name you want to search.

To sort country/region by time difference to search

 → Tap "By time zone". To return to the order by name,  → Tap "By name".

To register city/country based on the current location

 → Tap city/country.

Information

- To delete registered country/region, on the "World clock" screen,  → "Delete" → Mark a country/region to delete → Tap "Delete". Alternatively, touch and hold country/region → "Delete" to delete.
- To set summer time to or change summer time setting of registered country/region, touch and hold a country/region → "DST settings" → Select item. When the summer time is applied in cities/countries set to "Automatic" or for cities/countries set to "1 hour",  appears top of the city/country name ( may not appear for some cities/counties in which summer time is applied).

Using Stopwatch

1 On the "Stopwatch" screen, "Start"

- Measurement starts.

To measure lap time

Tap "Lap".

2 To stop the measurement, "Stop"

- To restart the measurement, tap "Restart" and tap "Reset" to re-measure.

Using Timer

- 1** On the "Timer" screen, set hour, minute, and second → "Start"
 - The timer starts.
 - To stop count down, tap "Stop", and to reset timer, tap "Reset".
 - Tap "Restart" to resume the paused timer.
- 2** To stop time-up notification sound, drag  out of the displayed circle

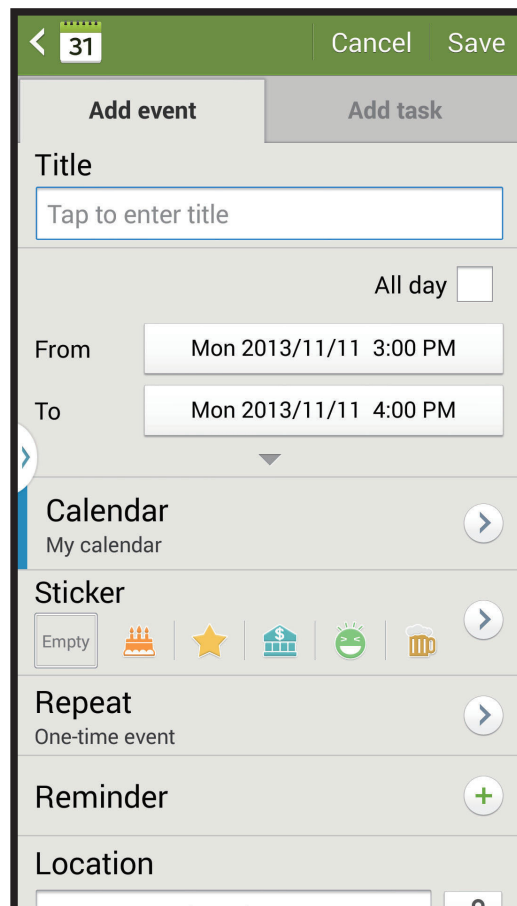
S Planner

Display Calendar to register event and task.
Set up a Google account to synchronize with Google calendar.

1 From the Home screen,  → "S Planner"

2 Tap 

- If a screen related to Google calendar synchronization appears, confirm the contents and tap "Done".



Add event screen

3 "Add event" or "Add task"

4 Set items → "Save"

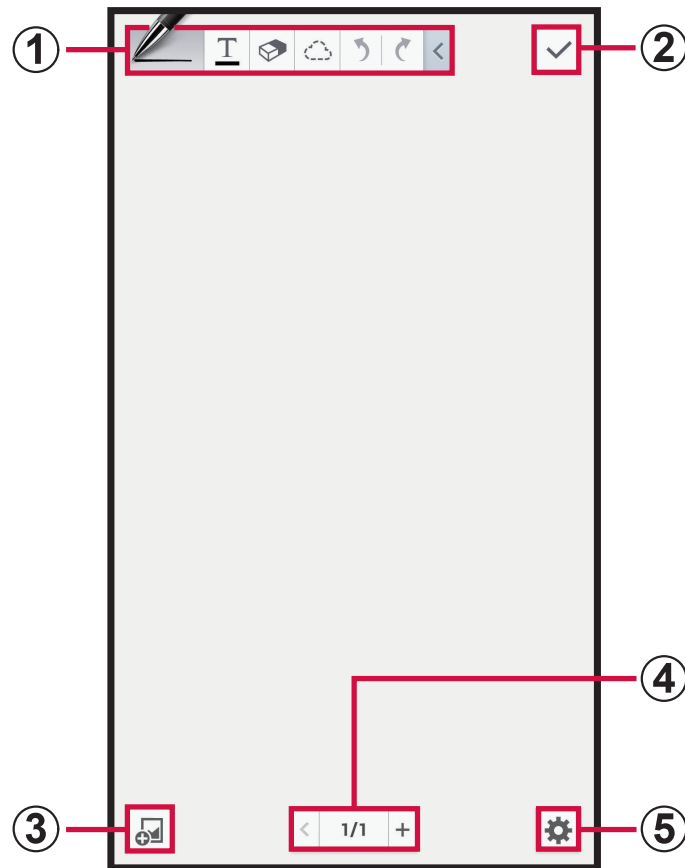
S Note

You can create notes and draw pictures.
Add photos or pictures to notes, also save recorded sound in notes.

Creating a note

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "S Note"
 - For the first time activation, on "Welcome" screen, tap "Start".
 - On "Select cover style" screen, select a cover you want to use, then tap "Next". Selected cover can be set automatically when a new note is created. When several covers are selected, one of the selected covers is applied in random order.
 - On "Select template" screen, select a template you want to use, then tap "Next".
 - Tap an account with which the note is synchronized on the "Sync account" screen. To set later, tap "Set later" and tap "Start".
- 2** After S note is created, tap 
- 3** Enter a file name → "OK"
 - Created note is saved.

■ Edit screen



S note creation screen
(Example)

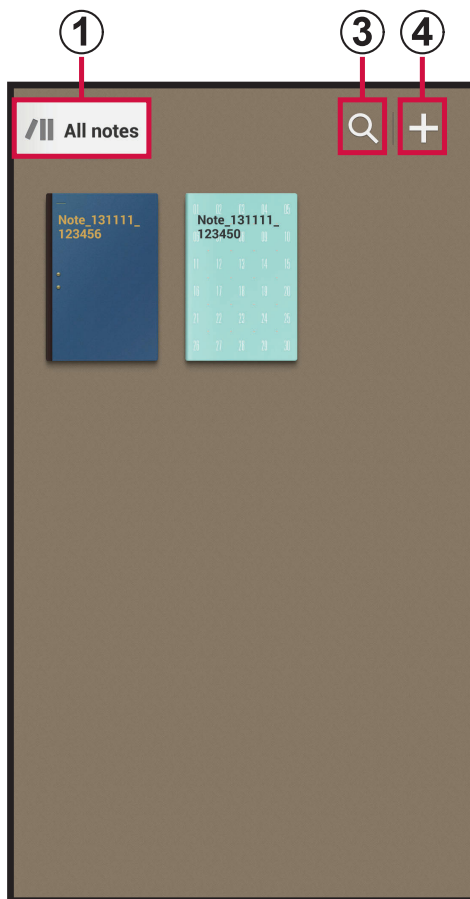
① Toolbar

-  : Select type/thickness/color of pen.
-  : Use the keypad to create a note.
-  : Change eraser size or clear note.
-  : Select a part of note. Tap the icon again to select a frame type.
Surround with a frame → Tap "Transform into" → "Text" to convert handwriting characters to text.
-  : Undo.
-  : Redo.
-  : Hide toolbar.

- ### ② Save the current note and return to the preview screen.
- Tap  to edit again.

- ③ Add voice memo, image, video, illustration, clipboard content or map. To delete added items, touch and hold the item → Tap "Delete".
- ④ **Switch pages**
- Tap ◀ / ▶ to switch pages. Tap + to add a new page.
- ⑤ **Edit a page**
- Add page: Add a page.
Delete page: Delete a page.
Add tag/Edit tags: Add/edit a tag.
Index page/Edit index: Add/edit an index.
Add template: Add a page template.
Background: Specify a page background.
Show grid: Display the page grid.

■ List screen



"All notes" screen
(Example)



"Recent notes" screen
(Example)

- ① Display "Recent notes" screen.
- ② Display "All notes" screen.
- ③ Name of S note, text in S note, text handwritten in S note, etc. can be searched.
- ④ Create an S note.

Menu of S Note

□ List screen

Tap  to display the following items.

Item	Description
Use new template	Select a template to create notes.
Delete	Delete a selected notes.
Sort by	Change order in the list by date, name, etc.
View by	Select Tag, Time, Location and change display format of notes. • When Tag is selected, tap  to delete the tag. • When Time is selected, tap  → "Sort by" to change display order in ascending order/descending order. • When Location is selected, tap  on the map to show notes by location.
List view/ Thumbnail view	Switch data display format.
Share via	Share selected notes in S note file/image file/PDF file/text format.
Import	Import S note files or PDF to create notes.

Item	Description
Export	Export selected notes as image files or PDF files.
Create folder	Create a new folder.
Change order	Change the order by dragging  .
Copy	Copy a note to a folder etc.
Move	Move a note to a folder etc.
Settings	
Sync account	Synchronize with Samsung account or Evernote.
Change default cover	Change a front cover style for applying automatically when a note is created.
Change default template	Change a template style for applying automatically when a note is created.
Add page	Select a page addition method.
Size of inserted image	Set a image size to insert.
Location tag	Set whether to add Location tag to note.
Downloads	Download background images.
Writing sound	Set whether to sound when drawing.

Item	Description
Settings	
Haptic feedback	Set vibration to ON/OFF when drawing.
Help	Display Help of S Note.

Touch and hold a note or folder on the list screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Delete	Delete notes or folders.
Share via	Share selected notes in S note file/image file/PDF file/text format.
Export	Export selected notes as image files or PDF files.
Copy	Copy a note to a folder etc.
Move	Move a note to a folder.
Rename	Change name of a note or folder.
Edit cover	Set a front cover from Gallery etc.
Add to Favorites/ Removed from favorites	Add to Favorites/remove from Favorites
Lock/ Unlock	Set a password to lock a note.

Item	Description
Add shortcut to home	Create a shortcut of selected note on the Home screen.

□ Edit screen

Tap  to display the following items.

Item	Description
Share via	Share a created note as S note file, image file, PDF file or text format.
Edit pages	Add index, copy/delete pages, copy pages from other notes, etc.
Record sketching	 blinks when tapped. While it is blinking, draw figures etc. to create animation the drawing process. To stop recording, tap  . On the preview screen, tap  to play the sketch.
Add shortcut to home	Create a shortcut of selected note on the Home screen.
Hide tools/ Show tools	Hide/show tools. Alternatively, widen/narrow distance between 3 fingers to hide/show tools.
Save	Save a creating note.
Save as	Save as a new file.

Information

- Displayed items vary by screen.

Voice Recorder

Recording voice sound

1 From the Home screen, → "Voice Recorder"

- Voice Recorder screen appears.
- When a microphone position screen appears, confirm the microphone position and then tap "OK".
- Tapping  /  switches recording quality to high/standard.

2 Tap

- Recording starts.
- To pause the recording, tap , or to start the recording, tap .
- To cancel the recording, tap  → "OK".
- When  is tapped while recording, the recorded content until the tapping are saved and then the Voice Recorder ends.

3 Tap

- Stop recording and save data.

Playing voice sound

1 From the Home screen,  → "Voice Recorder"

2 Tap 

- A recorded data list screen appears.

3 Tap data you want to play

- Playing starts.
- To pause the playing, tap , to start the playing, tap , or to stop the playing, tap .
- To crop voice sound, while playing voice sound, tap  → "OK" → Drag  to the position you want to crop →  → Select save method for cropped data → Tap "OK".
- Tap "x0.5"/"x1.0"/"x1.5"/"x2.0" to change playback speed.
- To adjust volume, press  (Volume key).

Menu of Voice Recorder

When you tap  on the Voice Recorder/list screen/playback screen, the following items appear.

- Displayed items vary by screen.

Item		Description
Share via		Share data using Wi-Fi Direct, send data via Bluetooth or attaching to mail.
Delete		Delete data.
Settings		
General		
Storage		Select saving location.
Recording quality		Set recording quality.
File name		
Contextual filename		Set whether to name files automatically.
Default name		Set default file name.

Item	Description
Settings	
Advanced	
Noise reduction	Set whether to use noise reduction.
Recording volume	Set recording audio volume.
Channel	Set channel to stereo/monaural.
Skip interval	Set skip interval when skip key ( / ) is tapped.
End	End voice Recorder.

Calculator

You can perform four arithmetic operations (+, −, ×, ÷), percent calculus, functional calculus, etc.

1 From the Home screen, → "Calculator"

- Turning the terminal sideways switches to the alpha calculator.
- Tap  to display history.

Menu of calculator

Tap  on the calculator screen to display the following items.

Item	Description
Clear history	Clear history.
Scientific calculator*/ Simple calculator*	Switch to Scientific calculator/ Simple calculator.

* Appears when "Auto rotate screen" (P.82) is OFF.

docomo backup

You can move and back up phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, etc. using external media such as microSD card.

- Do not remove the battery pack or micro SD card from the terminal while backing up or restoring data. Data may be damaged.
- When item name of contacts of another terminal (phone number etc.) is different from the terminal, the item name may be changed or deleted. And registered character may be removed because the characters that can be registered to phonebook vary by terminal.
- Phonebook data available to back up is phonebook saved in docomo account and the terminal.
- When backing up phonebook entries to microSD card, data without a name registered cannot be copied.
- Backup may not be performed if the microSD card does not have enough memory. In this case, delete unnecessary files to make available memory.
- Backup or restoration may not be performed if the battery level is low. In that case, charge the terminal then try to back up or restore again.
- When a microSD card is not inserted, data such as still images and videos are stored on the terminal. With this application, image data only stored on the terminal can be backed up. Data stored in microSD card cannot be backed up.

Backing up data

You can back up data such as phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, media files.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" → microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card/restore)
 - For the first activation, an agreement appears. Confirm the contents and then tap "Agree".
- 2** "Backup" → Mark data to be backed up → "Start backup" → "Backup"
- 3** Enter docomo apps password → "OK"
 - Selected data is stored in microSD card.
- 4** "Back to top"

Restoring backup file to the terminal

You can restore data such as phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, media files.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)" → "microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card/restore)"
- 2** "Restore" → "Select" of data type to be restored → Mark data to be restored → "Select"
- 3** Select restoration method → "Start"

restore" → "Restore"

- Selecting restoration method is not necessary for some data types.

4 Enter docomo apps password → "OK"

- Selected data is restored to the terminal.

5 "Back to top"

Copying phonebook entries saved in Google account or the terminal to docomo account

Contacts saved in Google account phonebook and in "Contacts" application provided by Samsung can be copied to docomo account.

1 From the Home screen,  → "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)"
→ "microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card/restore)"

2 "Phonebook account copy" → "Select" on the phonebook entry to be copied
→ "Overwrite"/"Add"

- Copied data is saved to docomo account.

3 "OK"

Setting schedule to back up automatically

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "ドコモバックアップ (docomo backup)"
→ "microSDカードへ保存 (Save to microSD card/restore)"
- 2** "Periodical backup" → "Add schedule"
→ Mark "Schedule ON"
- 3** "Select" → Mark data to be backed up
→ "Select"
- 4** Select a repeat task → Set Time/Day of week and Time/Day of month and Time → "Enter"
- 5** "Set" → Enter docomo apps password
→ "OK" → "OK"

YouTube

YouTube is a free online video streaming service. You can view or post video.

Playing video

1 From the Home screen,  → "YouTube"

- YouTube top screen appears.
- When an introduction for adding channels, tap "OK". The menu appears. Flick left to display YouTube top screen. To display the menu again, flick right.

2 Tap a video you want to play

- Video is played.
- Tap the screen to display icons. Tap , , etc. to pause/resume.

Posting video

You can post video you shot from the terminal.

- To post videos to YouTube, you need to sign in YouTube via Google account or YouTube account.

1 From the Home screen,  → "YouTube"

2 On the YouTube top screen, flick right → "Uploads" →  → Select an application → Select a video

- Uploading video screen appears.
- If a selection screen for upload method, "Only when on Wi-Fi"/"On any network" → Tap "OK".

When you are not signed in to YouTube

On the YouTube top screen, flick the screen right → "Sign in" → Follow the onscreen instructions to sign in the existing account/ set up a new account.

3 Enter/set required items → 

- Video will be uploaded.

Dictionary

Use 3 different language dictionaries (Japanese, English, Korean) to search for words and phrases.

The following dictionaries are included at time of purchase.

- 旺文社英和辞典 (Obunsha English-Japanese Dictionary)
- 旺文社和英辞典 (Obunsha Japanese-English Dictionary)
- ニューエース韓日辞典 (NEW-ACE KOREAN-JAPANESE DICTIONARY)
- ニューエース日韓辞典 (NEW-ACE JAPANESE-KOREAN DICTIONARY)

1 From the Home screen,  → "Dictionary"

2 Enter a search word in the keyword entry field



Dictionary screen

- ① **Dictionary currently in use**
- ② **Change dictionary**
 - : Switch type of dictionary.
 -  / : Switch between "JPN-ENG"/"ENG-JPN".
 -  / : Switch between "JPN-KOR"/"KOR-JPN".
- ③ **Search candidates list**
- ④ **Keyword input field**
- ⑤ **Voice search**
- ⑥ **Words and text**
 - Tap text or drag it to the left of the screen and search candidates list does not show. To show search candidates list again, drag text to the right of the screen.
- ⑦ **Special functions toolbar**
 - : Highlight selected portions of text.
 - : Change the font size of text.
 - : Add memos to displayed words.
 - : Save displayed words in flashcard.
- ⑧ **Switch contents of text display**

Dictionary menu

Tap  on the dictionary screen to show the following items.

Item	Description
Search*	Return to dictionary screen.
Flashcards	Show saved vocabulary lists.
History	Show search histories.
Settings	Customize fonts.
Help	Check dictionary app usage methods, notation rules, and product information.

* Appears on the Flashcards and History screens.

POLARIS Office

You can display/edit Office document etc. or create new one on the terminal.

If you have a Dropbox account, you can manage files online.

Compatible file types and versions are as follows.

- Some files with password are available only for viewing.

Type	Version		
	Create	Edit	View
Microsoft Word	MS Word 2010 (.docx)	MS Word 97-2013 (.doc, .docx)	MS Word 97-2013 (.doc, .docx, .dot, .dotx, .rtf)
Microsoft Excel	MS Excel 2010 (.xlsx)	MS Excel 97-2013 (.xls, .xlsx)	MS Excel 97-2013 (.xls, .xlsx, .xlt, .xltx, .csv)
Microsoft Power Point	MS Power Point 2010 (.pptx)	MS PowerPoint 97-2013 (.ppt, .pptx)	MS PowerPoint 97-2013 (.ppt, .pptx, .pps, .ppsx, .pot, .potx)
Adobe PDF	—	—	V1.2-V1.7 (.pdf)

Type	Version		
	Create	Edit	View
Hansoft Hangul	—	—	HWP 97- 3.0, 2002- 2010 (.hwp)
Text	(.txt)	(.txt)	(.txt, .asc)

Creating a new file

1 From the Home screen,  → "POLARIS Office 5"

- The POLARIS Office screen appears.
- When a user registration screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions.

2  → **Select a file type to create** → **Select a template**

- When file type is set to "Text", a template selection screen does not appear.
- If you select "Slide" for file type and "Blank" for template, select layout on the selection slide layout screen.

3 Create a file

4  /  /  /  → "Save"/"Save as" → Enter a file name → Select a saving location → 

Displaying/Editing file

1 From the Home screen, → "POLARIS Office 5"

- Tap a file in the list of currently used files on the POLARIS Office screen to open the file.

Item	Description
File Browser	Search for files from saving location.
Form type	Search by file type.
Favorites	Search from file added to Favorites.
View Together	Share file display on the terminal with the other device with POLARIS Office installed. You can show a pointer or write characters on the screen. • Connect the device for sharing screens to the same W-Fi network in advance.

2 Tap a file to display/edit

- On the Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, Microsoft PowerPoint screen, flick the band at the top of the screen left or right to switch between editing mode and viewing mode, To edit Adobe PDF, tap .
- To save edited files,  /  /  /  /  → Tap "Save"/"Save as".

S Health

Use sensors on the terminal to record the amount of calories you spend and you take, display temperature and humidity, manage weight to support your health.

1 From the Home screen, → "S Health"

- S Health screen appears.
- When you activate for the first time, the "Welcome" screen appears. Tap "Start" to display Terms of use. Read the terms and mark "Agree" → "Next" → Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Sign in when Samsung account screen appears and if you have already had a Samsung account.
- While menu is displayed, flick left to show S Health. Tap  on the S Health screen to show menu.

2 Tap an item to check

- On the S Health screen,  → Tap "Comfort level" to check temperature and humidity.

Item	Description
Calories burned	Check the amount of burned calories recorded in "Walking mate"/"Exercise mate" and amount of calories to spend.
Calorie intake	Check the amount of calories recorded in "Food tracker" and amount of calories you can take.

Item	Description
	Check the result on a chart. • Tap  to go back to the S Health screen.

Information

- For details on S Health, on the S Health screen,  → Tap "Help" and download to refer to.
- To measure temperature and humidity accurately in "Comfort level", put the terminal on somewhere to get your hand off in a circumstance where the temperature (-20 to 60°C) and humidity (10 to 99%) are stable. If the circumstance changes rapidly, the temperature of the terminal is high, or you are touching the terminal, measured value may be incorrect or measurement may take time. However, the temperature reaches sub-zero, measuring humidity is unavailable.
- "Comfort level" is measured by the temperature and humidity sensor. For the location of the temperature and humidity sensor, see "Part names and functions" (P.51).
- To measure accurate temperature and humidity, use thermometer or hygrometer separately.
- The amount of calories you need is calculated from basal metabolic rate (BMR) based on the profile you entered. The amount of calories you really need depends on your age, body composition, nutrition you need. Use the amount as a guide.

S Voice

Operate each terminal function such as sending SMS, creating memo, etc by voice input.

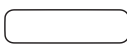
Before using S Voice

To enhance the voice recognition, take care of the following points.

- Speak clearly against the terminal.
- Use in quiet place.
- Avoid using slang, dialect, etc.

Using S Voice

1 From the Home screen,  → "S Voice"

- S Voice screen appears.
- Alternatively, press  twice to activate S Voice.
- When Samsung Disclaimer or Terms of Service appears, confirm the contents, then tap "Confirm" → "Agree".
- When "About S Voice" screen appears, confirm the operation according to the onscreen instructions.

Information

- For details on S Voice, on the S Voice screen,  → "Help", for instructions on how to input S Voice, on the S Voice screen,  → "Settings" → Tap "Help" to refer.

Hands-free mode

When Hands-free mode is ON, you can operate each function without holding the terminal with your hand while driving a car. Also, when there is a notification such as incoming call or SMS reception, the notification content is read.

1 On the S Voice screen, → "Turn on Hands-free mode"

- S Voice screen for Hands-free mode appears.
- When a screen concerning to Voice wake-up appears, confirm the contents, then tap "OK".

Information

- If S Voice is ended with Hands-free mode ON, notification content is read even when Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate) is set (some notifications may not be read). To set Hands-free mode to OFF, on the S Voice screen for Hands-free mode,  → Tap "Turn off Hands-free mode".

Settings

Setting menu

You can set various items such as screen brightness, screen view, ringtone, communication, etc.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings"
- 2** Select a tab → Select a menu item and make settings

Information

- Enter a keyword to the search box to search within the Settings and check the setting values.

"Connections" tab

Network connections

You can set for wireless network connection.

Item	Description
Wi-Fi	→ P.381
Bluetooth	→ P.469
Tethering and portable hotspot	→ P.389
Airplane mode	→ P.392
Network restriction mode	→ P.393
Data usage	→ P.394
Location services	→ P.339
More networks	
Mobile networks	Set Mobile data, roaming, access point (APN), network mode, network operator.
VPN	→ P.397
NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Setting	→ P.399

Wi-Fi

You can use Wi-Fi function of the terminal to connect to wireless access point of your home or company network. Also, you can connect to Public wireless LAN service access point to use mails and Internet.

■ Reception interference caused by Bluetooth devices

The terminal's wireless LAN device and Bluetooth devices use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). If you use the terminal near a Bluetooth device, reception interference may occur or the communications speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem. In these cases, do the following:

1. Keep the wireless LAN device over 20 m away from a Bluetooth device.
2. Within 20 m, turn off the Bluetooth device.

Information

- Packet communication can also be used even when Wi-Fi function is ON. However, Wi-Fi will be used first during Wi-Fi connection. When Wi-Fi network is disconnected with "Auto network switch" marked, network is automatically switched to LTE/3G/GPRS. Be noticed that packet communication charge is applied if you keep using LTE/3G/GPRS network after toggling.
- Setting "Wi-Fi option password" is required for using docomo service/cloud via Wi-Fi when you use Wi-Fi. Set from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "docomo service/cloud" → "Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps".
- Location information can be detected even if Wi-Fi function is not ON. From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → Tap "Wi-Fi",  → "Advanced" → Mark "Always allow scanning".

■ Enabling Wi-Fi and connecting to network

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"
- 2** Tap 
 - Scanning available Wi-Fi networks starts automatically and a list is displayed.
- 3** Tap a Wi-Fi network you want to connect → "Connect"
 - To connect to a Wi-Fi network protected by security, enter a password (security key) and tap "Connect".

Connecting using WPS

Wi-Fi network with "WPS available" shown can be connected using WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup). On the Wi-Fi network list screen,  → "WPS push button"/"WPS PIN entry" → Operate on access point device.

Information

- The Wi-Fi network password (security key) is automatically saved when connection is established so that you do not need to enter it next time.

■ Notifying Wi-Fi open network

Set whether to notify when available open network exists near you.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"

2  → "Advanced"

3 Mark "Network notification"

■ Canceling connection of Wi-Fi network

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"

2 Tap a connected Wi-Fi network → "Forget"

■ Setting Wi-Fi access point

- For information necessary for connection, refer to user manual of wireless LAN access point you use. For connecting to company LAN or using Public wireless LAN service, ask a network administrator or service provider about the required information for connecting.
- When the wireless LAN access point is set for connecting only to the MAC address registered device, register the MAC address of the terminal to the wireless LAN access point. To check MAC address, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi" →  → Tap "Advanced". You can view IP address for connected Wireless LAN access point.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"

2  → "Add Wi-Fi network"

3 Enter the network SSID → Set the security (Authentication method)

- The possible certificate method is "WEP", "WPA/WPA2/FT PSK", "802.1x EAP".

4 Enter a password → "Connect"

- If you set Security to "None", entering password is not needed.

■ Connecting Passpoint compatible access point automatically

Set whether to automatically connect to Passpoint-compatible Wi-Fi access point within the area without the Wi-Fi access point set.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"

2  → "Advanced"

3 Tap  of "Passpoint"

- To scan Passpoint compatible access point, tap "Passpoint".

■ Sorting Wi-Fi networks

Sort Wi-Fi networks scanned by the terminal.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"

2  → "Advanced"

3 "Sort by" → "Alphabet"/"RSSI"

- Sort Wi-Fi networks by name/signal strength (RSSI).

■ Setting sleep policy of Wi-Fi

You can set to disable Wi-Fi when the display of the terminal turns off or to enable when charging.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"
- 2**  → "Advanced"
- 3** "Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep" → Select a sleep policy

Information

- If Keep Wi-Fi during sleep is set to "Only when plugged in" or "Never (increases data usage)", network connection automatically changes to the mobile network when Wi-Fi communication becomes unavailable. In such case, packet communication fee may become high. If you do not want to change to mobile network, mark "Always".

■ Check for Internet service

Set whether to check availability of the connected Wi-Fi network and change to the mobile network if it is unavailable.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"
- 2**  → "Advanced"
- 3** Mark "Auto network switch"

■ Setting Wi-Fi timer

Set to auto-connect/disconnect Wi-Fi network.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"
- 2**  → "Advanced"
- 3** "Wi-Fi timer"
- 4** Mark "Starting time"/"Ending time"
 - Mark "Starting time" to automatically connect, and mark "Ending time" to automatically disconnect.
- 5** Set start time/end time → "Done"

■ Using static IP address

You can set the terminal to connect to Wi-Fi network using the static IP address.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"
- 2** Tap 
- 3** Tap Wi-Fi network to connect → Mark "Show advanced options"
- 4** Tap "IP settings" field → "Static"
- 5** Set required items
 - For using static IP address, enter the following items.
 - IP address
 - Gateway
 - Network prefix length
 - DNS 1/DNS 2
- 6** "Connect"

■ Using Wi-Fi Direct

You can exchange data by connecting Wi-Fi Direct compatible devices.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi"

2  → "Wi-Fi Direct"

3 Tap a detected device name

- When the connection is accepted on the searched device, the terminal will be connected via Wi-Fi Direct and  appears on the status bar.
- You can refresh the search result by tapping "Scan".

To connect with multiple devices

- "Multi connect" → Mark a device to connect → Tap "Done".

■ Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Wi-Fi" → "Wi-Fi Direct"

2 "End connection" → "OK"

Using tethering

Tethering is a function which to connects devices support wireless LAN and USB to Internet via mobile phone lines, for example, a smart phone, as a modem.

- Up to 10 devices can be connected using Wi-Fi tethering at a time and 1 device can be connected using USB tethering. When you use Wi-Fi tethering and USB tethering at a time, 11 devices in total can be connected.

■ Setting Wi-Fi tethering

You can use your terminal as a portable hotspot and connect at most 10 wireless LAN devices to Internet.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Tethering and portable hotspot" → "Portable Wi-Fi hotspot"
- 2** Tap 
- 3** Confirm details of notes → "OK" → "OK"

■ Setting access point for Wi-Fi tethering

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Tethering and portable hotspot" → "Portable Wi-Fi hotspot"
- 2** Tap 
- 3** Confirm details of notes → "OK" → "OK"
- 4** "Configure"
- 5** Tap "Network SSID" field → Input the network SSID
 - By default, "AndroidHotspotXXXX" is set.
- 6** "Security"
 - Select a proper setting from "Open" and "WPA2 PSK".
- 7** Tap "Password" field → Enter password
 - Password is not required if you set "Open" in "Security".
- 8** "Save"

Information

- "WPA2 PSK" is set by default.
- While connecting via Wi-Fi tethering, in the Portable Wi-Fi hotspot screen, "Configure" → Mark "Hide my device" → Tap "Save" to disconnect the connected wireless LAN device temporarily, but it connects again automatically.
- If "Hide my device" is marked, the terminal cannot be scanned. When you connect from the other device, confirm the information displayed in "How to connect from other devices" on the Portable Wi-Fi hotspot screen, and then set the portable Wi-Fi hotspot manually.

■ Setting USB tethering

You can connect to Internet by connecting the terminal to PC via supplied USB cable SC02.

- To perform tethering, installing dedicated driver to a PC is required. For details, refer to the URL below.

<From a PC>

<http://www.samsung.com/jp/support/usefulsoftware/KIES/JSP> (In Japanese)

1 Insert USB plug of USB cable SC02 into the external connection jack of the terminal

- For connection method, see "Connecting with USB cable SC02" (P.478).

2 Insert USB plug of USB cable SC02 into a USB connector of a PC

- 3** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Tethering and portable hotspot"
- 4** "USB tethering" → Confirm details of note → "OK"

Information

- microSD card cannot be connected to PC during USB tethering.
- Operating environments for USB tethering are as follows. DOCOMO is not liable for the operation after upgrading/adding/changing OS.
 - Windows XP (Service Pack 3 or later)
 - Windows Vista
 - Windows 7
 - Windows 8

Airplane mode

Disable all wireless connections.

- 1** From the Home screen, tap  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Airplane mode" → "OK"

Information

- Alternatively, press  for 1 second or longer and tap "Airplane mode" → "OK" to switch setting.
- If you set "Airplane mode" to ON, Wi-Fi and Bluetooth also turn OFF. However you can turn ON the Wi-Fi and Bluetooth while Airplane mode.

Network restriction mode

Disable network connections for all applications. Only receiving incoming calls and SMS is available.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Network restriction mode" → "OK"

Information

- Turn on/off Network restriction mode from the Notification panel (P.108).
- When "Network restriction mode" is enabled, Wi-Fi connection is disabled.

Data usage

Enable/disable mobile data communication or set upper limit of data communication. Also set a period of time for measuring amount of communications.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Data usage"

- Data usage screen appears and estimated value of mobile data usage for a period and for each application.
- Mark "Mobile data" to enable Internet access via mobile networks.
- Set limit of mobile data communication usage and set to alert when limit reaches on the chart. To set limit, mark "Set mobile data limit".

Limiting background data communication

Restrict data communication automatically made by applications.

On the data usage screen,  → Mark "Restrict background.." → Tap "OK".

Turning automatic data synchronization off

Restrict auto synchronization of account.

On the data usage screen,  → Unmark "Auto sync data" → Tap "OK".

Displaying status of Wi-Fi use

Estimated amount of Wi-Fi data usage for a period and for each application.

On the data usage screen,  → Mark "Show Wi-Fi usage" → Tap "Wi-Fi" tab.

Restricting use of mobile hotspot

Prevent background apps from using specified Wi-Fi network.

On the data usage screen,  → "Mobile hotspots" → Mark Wi-Fi network you want to restrict.

Setting access point

Access point for connecting the Internet (sp-mode) is already registered. You can add or change it if necessary.

By default, sp-mode is set for the usual access point.

■ Checking the access point in use

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks" → "Access Point Names"

■ Setting an access point additionally

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks" → "Access Point Names" → 
- 2 "Name" → Enter a name of network profile to create → "OK"
- 3 "APN" → Enter the access point name → "OK"

4 Enter the other items required by the network operator

- Do not change "MCC" and "MNC" other than 440 and 10, respectively. If they are changed, they are not displayed on the screen.

5 → "Save"

Information

- When you changed settings of MCC or MNC and access points are not displayed, initialize the access point or set an access point manually.

■ Initializing an access point

By initializing an access point, the settings return to the default state.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks" → "Access Point Names"

2  → "Reset to default"

sp-mode

sp-mode is an ISP for NTT DOCOMO smartphone. In addition to accessing Internet, you can use the mail service using the same address as i-mode mail (@docomo.ne.jp), etc. sp-mode is a service requiring subscription. For details of sp-mode, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Connecting to VPN (Virtual Private Network)

VPN (Virtual Private Network) is a technology to connect to the information in a protected local network from another network. Generally, VPNs are provided to companies, schools and other facilities. A user can access to the information in the local network from outside of the premises.

- To set up a VPN access from the terminal, you need to retrieve the information related to security from your network administrator.
- When ISP is set to sp-mode, PPTP is not available.

■ Adding a VPN

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "VPN"

- If an attention screen appears, tap "OK" and set screen unlock method following the onscreen instructions.

2 Tap 

To edit VPN

Touch and hold VPN to edit → "Edit network"

→ Set each item → Tap "Save".

To delete VPN

Touch and hold VPN to delete → Tap "Delete network".

3 Follow the instruction of the network administrator to set required items of VPN settings

4 "Save"

■ Connecting to a VPN

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "VPN"

2 Tap a VPN you want to connect to

3 Enter necessary authentication information → "Connect"

-  appears on the status bar.

■ Disconnecting VPN

1 Open the Notification panel → Tap the VPN connecting notification

2 "Disconnect"

NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Setting

Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai function, or set to permit/deny sending/receiving of a content/file etc. via Reader/Writer, P2P function.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Setting"

2 Set required items

Item	Description
NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock	Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai function.
Reader/Writer, P2P	Set whether to permit exchange of data when putting the terminal close to the other device with NFC module built-in or Reader/Writer, P2P function installed. → P.475
Android Beam	Set whether to permit to send/receive contents such as web pages or contacts to/from other device with P2P function installed. • Enable "Reader/Writer, P2P" before using.

Item	Description
S Beam	Set whether to permit sending/receiving files such as still images, videos, documents, etc. using P2P and Wi-Fi Direct function.

Connect and share

Set to connect to/share with other devices.

Item	Description
Nearby devices	→ P.486
Screen Mirroring	Share screen on the terminal with other device*. • Connection with a non-HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection) – compatible device may not be established. • Depending on the network connection or status of the other device, playback may be interrupted. • For Wi-Fi networks using specific frequency bands, scanning device may fail.

* Devices corresponding to this function do not exist in Japan as of October 2013.

"Device" tab

Sound & display

Item	Description
Sound	
Volume	→ P.405
Vibration intensity	Set intensity of vibration.
Ringtones	→ P.406
Vibrations	→ P.406
Notifications	→ P.406
Vibrate when ringing	Set ON/OFF of vibration for notifying of incoming call or new SMS.
Dialing keypad tone	Set operation sound for tapping number key on the dialpad to ON/OFF.
Touch sounds	Set operation sound to ON/OFF for tapping  ,  or a menu item.
Screen lock sound	Enable/disable screen lock/unlock sound.

Item	Description
Sound	
GPS notifications	Set sound for notifying GPS to ON/OFF.
Haptic feedback	Enable/disable vibration for tapping  ,  , etc.
Audio output	Set audio output when connected to an HDMI device.
Adapt Sound	Optimize sound quality of call and playback sound heard from earphones. If the volume of "Music, video, games and other media" is set to 14 or higher, optimization is canceled automatically. When decrease the volume to 13 or lower, it is optimized again.
Display	
Brightness	→ P.407
Screen timeout	Set time before screen display turns off. The screen becomes a little dark approx. 6 seconds before the set time to notify the screen off.

Item	Description
Display	
Touch key light duration	Set timeout for touch key light.
Screen mode	Set contrast of the screen.
Reading mode	Set an application to optimize the screen for reading. Available for only some selectable applications.
Auto adjust screen tone	Set whether to adjust screen tone according to the displayed image to save the battery.
Daydream	→ P.407
Auto rotate screen	Set whether to automatically switch portrait or landscape view according to orientation of the terminal.
Show battery percentage	Set whether to show battery level (%) on the status bar.
Edit after screen capture	Set whether to display the editing screen after saving a screen as an image (screen capture).

Item	Description
Multi window	
Open in multi window view	Set whether to automatically display contents in Multi window mode when files are opened from My Files or Video, or when files attached to emails or messages are opened. → P.113
LED indicator	→ P.409

Shutting off device ringtone

If Silent mode is set to "Vibrate"/"Mute", incoming call ringtones and notification sounds no longer ring.

1 Press and hold for 1 second or longer

- A phone option screen appears.

2 "Mute"/"Vibrate"

- If "Mute" is set,  appears on the status bar.
- If "Vibrate" is set,  appears on the status bar.

Information

- If you change "Ringtone" (P.405) of "Volume" when Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate) is set to "Vibrate"/"Mute", Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate) turns to off.

Adjusting volumes

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Sound" → "Volume"

- The volume bar appears.

Item	Description
Music, video, games, and other media	Adjust playback sound of Music Player etc.
Ringtone	Adjust ringtone for incoming call.
Notifications	Adjust notification sound for incoming notification (P.108).
System	Adjust touch operation sound and ON/OFF sound for screen lock/unlock, GPS notification.

2 Drag  of each sound volume left or right → "OK"

■ Adjusting ringtone volume with Volume key

1 Press  (Volume key)

Notifying incoming call/notification by sound/vibration

Set melody etc. of ringtone/notification sound for incoming call or notification or whether to vibrate the terminal.

■ Setting ringtone/notification sound

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Sound" → "Ringtones"/"Notifications"
- 2** Tap a ringtone/notification sound you want to set → "OK"
 - When "Silent" is set, ringtone/notification sound does not sound.
 - When "Ringtones" is selected, tap "Add" to search ringtone to add.

■ Setting vibration

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Sound" → "Vibrations" → Select a pattern you want to set → "OK"
 - You can adjust the intensity of vibration at "Vibration intensity" (P.401).
 - Tap "Create" to create a pattern yourself.

Information

- When Silent mode is not set with "Vibrate when ringing" marked, ringtone/notification sound sounds and the terminal vibrates when receiving calls, SMS, etc. If you unmark "Vibrate when ringing", only ringtone/notification sound sounds.

Adjusting brightness of the display

The brightness of the display is set to auto-adjustment according to the ambient brightness by default. To adjust manually, perform the following operations.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Display" → "Brightness" → Unmark "Automatic brightness"
- 2** Drag  of "Brightness level" left or right → "OK"

Information

- When the terminal is hot, the highest brightness may not be set due to prevention of overheating.

Screen saver

Set ON/OFF, type, activating timing for screen saver.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Display" → "Daydream"
- 2**  → Confirm the note → "OK"
- 3** "Colors"/"Flipboard"/"Photo Frame"/"Photo Table"

- If you select "Flipboard", tap  and set a timing for downloading new item automatically.
- When "Photo Table"/"Photo Frame", tap  and then mark a folder in which image to be displayed is saved → Tap .

4 "Start now"/"Select dream time"

- Tap "Start now" to display screen saver in preview.
- Tap "Select dream time" to set a timing ("While docked"/"While charging"/"All") for activating screen saver.

Setting LED indicator

Set for notification LED when the screen is off.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "LED indicator"

2 Set required items

Item	Description
Charging	Set whether to turn on notification LED when charging the battery.
Low battery	Set whether to flash notification LED when the remaining battery becomes low.
Notifications	Set whether to flash notification LED for missed call, unread SMS or application event.
Voice recording	Set whether to flash notification LED while recording by Voice Recorder etc. • You can set when "Notifications" is marked.

Personalization

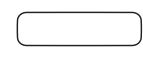
Item	Description
Lock screen*	
Screen lock	→ P.417
Multiple widgets	Set whether to display shortcuts by flicking the top of the lock screen left or right.
Clock widget options	Set widgets to be displayed on the lock screen.
Shortcuts	Set whether to display shortcuts on the lock screen. Follow the onscreen instructions to edit/delete shortcuts.
Personal message	Customize personal information to be displayed on the lock screen.
Owner information	Set whether to display owner information on the lock screen. Also, enter owner information to be displayed.
Make pattern visible	Set whether to display the trace of pattern when unlocking the screen.
Unlock effect	Set an effect for unlocking.

Item	Description
Lock screen*	
Wake up in lock screen	Set whether to unlock by wakeup command (voice sound) when Screen lock is set to Swipe/Touch.
Improve facial recognition	Shoot you in various conditions such as in the light, in the dark, wearing glasses, etc. to improve accuracy of facial recognition.
Lock automatically	Set time from when the screen display turns off till when the screen lock activates.
Lock instantly with power key	Set to activate screen lock by pressing  .
Help text	Set whether to display Help text on the lock screen.
Wallpaper	→ P.419
Font	
Font style	Set font style for the screen.
Font size	Set font size in the screen.

Item	Description
Notification panel	
Brightness adjustment	Set whether to adjust brightness of the screen on the Notification panel.
Set the quick setting buttons	Select Quick setting buttons displayed on the Notification panel or change their order.
Accessibility	
Auto rotate screen	Set whether to switch to portrait/landscape view according to orientation of the terminal automatically.
Screen timeout	Set time until screen display turns off. The screen becomes dim a little in approx. 6 seconds before the set time to notify the screen off.
Lock automatically	Set time from when the screen display turns off till when the screen lock activates. It appears when "Screen lock" (P.410) is set to other than "Swipe/Touch", "None".
Speak passwords	Set whether to use TalkBack to read out entered password.

Item	Description
Accessibility	
Answering/ending calls	Set whether to answer a call by pressing  or to end call by pressing  etc.
Easy touch mode	Set whether to operate answering/rejecting a call, stopping/snoozing an alarm, etc by touching instead of dragging.
Show shortcuts	Set whether to display the accessibility shortcut etc. on the terminal option screen displayed when  is pressed for 1 second or longer.
Manage accessibility	Export: Save accessibility settings as a file. Update: Import a saved file to update a user accessibility setting. Share via: Share accessibility settings file using online services, send it via Bluetooth or attaching to mail. Android Beam: Send user accessibility setting file via NFC.
TalkBack	Enable user accessibility such as service with which sound or vibration responds to your operations and text-reading service.

Item	Description
Accessibility	
Font size	Set font size in the screen.
Magnification gestures	Set magnifying screen.
Negative colors	Invert screen color.
Color adjustment	Test color sense to adjust the screen display in most suitable colors.
Notification reminder	Set whether to beep and the alert duration when there is unread notification SMS, email, etc.
Accessibility shortcut	Set whether to use user accessibility with a simple operation. Press  for 1 second or longer to display the Device options screen and touch and hold the screen with 2 fingers to use the accessibility.
Text-to-speech options	Set sound synthesizing engine for text reading or text reading speed.
Sound balance	Set sound balance when listening music with Media Player using earphone.

Item	Description
Accessibility	
Mono audio	Change audio to monaural for easy listening with one earphone.
Turn off all sounds	Turn OFF all sound including listening volume.
Flash notification	Set whether to notify information by flashing the light.
Assistant menu	Set whether to display an assistant menu.
Press and hold delay	Set time for touching and holding the touch panel.
Interaction control	Enable/disable motion and screen timeout or set touch operation range. • To set operations when the function is enabled, press and hold  (lower of the Volume key) and  at the same time, then operate following onscreen instructions. • The function is not available while "Multi window" is set to ON (P.404). • Enabling the function automatically disables "Auto rotate screen" (P.82).

Item	Description
Call	→ P.182
Blocking mode	→ P.420

- * Displayed items vary by setting of the screen lock. And depending on "Change home" setting, changing setting may not be available or changing may not be applied.

Information

- You can download compatible applications from Google Play to set.
- Note that if you permit use of "TalkBack", personal information such as credit card number and communication using the user interface are recorded. Note that DOCOMO is not responsible for data or information leak.
- For the first time when turning "TalkBack" to ON, a confirmation screen asking if you turn on touch guide function appears. Touch guide is a function for reading up or displaying an explanation for an item of your finger position. When the touch guide function is ON, tap once to select item and then double-tap it for item selection and scroll with 2 fingers for operation.
- "TalkBack" may not work properly when docomo Palette LIVE UX is set as Home screen.

Setting unlock method for the screen lock

You can set to require entering unlock pattern, PIN or password set in advance on the touch screen, face authentication etc. for unlocking the screen lock.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Lock screen" → "Screen lock"
- 2** Select unlock method → Enter according to the onscreen instructions
 - Set "PIN" with 4- to 16-digit number;
set "Password" with 4 to 16 characters including alphabets.

Information

- To set the screen lock to OFF, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Lock screen" → "Screen lock" → Enter the set unlocking method → "None".
- When you fail entering unlock pattern, PIN or password 5 times, a message indicating to re-enter 30 seconds later appears. If you forget unlock pattern, tap "Backup PIN" and enter backup PIN entered when setting unlock pattern. When Google account is set, "Forgot pattern?" appears. Tap the screen to sign in to Google account to cancel the screen lock. If you forget PIN, password, or backup PIN, access from a PC to Find my mobile (Remote tracking) web page and perform "Unlock my screen" to unlock screen. For details, refer to the Find my mobile (Remote tracking) web page. → P.435
- When setting Face unlock, hold the terminal in front of your face to fit your face in the displayed frame.

Wallpaper

Set wallpapers for the Home screen or lock screen.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Wallpaper"

2 Set required items

Item	Description
Home screen	Select a wallpaper for the Home screen from "Gallery", "Live wallpapers" or "Wallpapers".
Lock screen	Select a wallpaper from "Gallery", "Wallpapers", or "Travel wallpaper".
Home and lock screens	Select a wallpaper for the Home screen and lock screen from "Gallery", "Live wallpapers" or "Wallpapers".

Blocking mode

Disable receiving call, notification, alarm and timer and LED indicator.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Device" tab → "Blocking mode"

2 Tap 

3 Set each item

Item	Description
Features	
Block incoming calls	Disable receiving incoming call during the period of time you specified. • Receiving from the other parties set in "Allowed contacts".
Disable notifications	Set not to emit notification sound or vibrate the terminal for the period of time you specified.
Disable alarm and timer	During set time period, only alarm or timer screen appears without alarm sounding or vibration.
Turn off LED indicator	Disable lighting LED during the period of time you specified.

Item	Description
Set time	
Always	Set whether to activate block mode always.
From	Set start time of block mode.
To	Set end time of block mode.
Allowed contacts	
Allowed contacts	Select contacts for permitting incoming calls/notifications. If you select "Custom", "Allowed contact list" can be set.
Allowed contact list	Confirm/delete permitted contact or add a new contact.

"Controls" tab

Voice and input methods

Item	Description
Language and input	
Language	Set language to use.
Default	Set input method.
Moji-Henshu	→ P.97
Samsung Japanese keyboard	→ P.92
Google voice typing	→ P.97
Voice search	Set a language etc. for voice search.
Text-to-speech options	Set sound synthesizing engine for text reading or text reading speed.
Pointer speed	Set a pointer speed when using mouse/trackpad.

Item	Description
Voice control	
Incoming calls	Set whether to allow answering a call by voice sound. When answering a call by voice command, emit the other party's voice from the speaker to call hands-free.
Alarm	Set whether to stop alarm sounding or set snooze by voice sound. The function is available only when "Voice control" for Alarm in the "Clock" app is set to ON. → P.344
Camera	Set whether to shoot photos by voice sound. The function is available only when "Voice control" in the "Camera" app is set to ON. → P.307
Music	Set whether to play or pause music by voice sound. The function is available only when "Voice control" in the "Music" app is turned on.

Item	Description
Hands-free mode	
Incoming call	Set whether to read out caller information when receiving a call.
Call-accept	Set whether to answer a call by waving your hand left and right over the screen,
Message	Set whether to read out caller information when receiving an SMS.
Alarm	Set whether to read out alarm information when alarm goes off.
Schedule	Set whether to read out event title at the scheduled time saved in S Planner.

Motion control

Item	Description
S Gesture	→ P.75
Motions	→ P.77
Palm motion	→ P.79
S Preview	
Information preview	→ P.81
Progress preview	→ P.81
Speed dial preview	→ P.81
Webpage magnifier	→ P.81
Sound and haptic feedback	Set whether to notify by operation sound and vibration when operating S Preview.
Smart screen	→ P.427

Item	Description
Increase touch sensitivity	Set whether to increase sensitivity of touch operation to make operation available with a gloved hand. • Using leather gloves improves touch operation recognition rate. Some functions may not work with gloves of other materials. • When you operate for the first time after the setting is ON, touch the display a little longer for the first touch. It improves the recognition rate for subsequent operations. • If you perform touch operation without gloves with the setting ON, unintended operations may be performed.

Smart screen

Detect your operations to disable Screen timeout or scroll the screen automatically.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Controls" tab → "Smart screen"

2 Set required items

Item	Description
Smart stay	Set Screen timeout setting to be disabled when the terminal detects the screen is seen.
Smart rotation	Set whether to rotate screen automatically according to face orientation. • It can be set when "Auto rotate screen" (P.82) is ON.
Smart pause*	Set whether to pause video if the terminal judges that you do not watch the screen based on the orientation of your face.

Item	Description
Smart scroll	Set whether to automatically scroll the screen tilting your head or the terminal by detecting your eyes. • Tap "Smart scroll" to set scroll method, scroll speed, visual feedback (Display visual feedback icon while detecting/when complete in smart scroll). • If you operate in a dark place or under a light, or moving or shaking the terminal, the terminal may not work properly.

* Works for only video player application provided by Samsung.

Information

-  blinks on the status bar while the function activates.

"General" tab

Item	Description
docomo service/cloud	
docomo cloud	Make settings for docomo cloud compatible services.
Application manager	Set regularly update checking etc.
docomo Wi-Fi Easy Connection	Make easy settings for using docomo Wi-Fi or home Wi-Fi network.
Wi-Fi settings for docomo apps	Set to use docomo services via Wi-Fi.
docomo apps password	Set a password for using in docomo apps. • By default, "0000" is set.
AUTO-GPS	Set AUTO-GPS or display log of positioned places.
docomo location information	Set location information service function for imadoco search/imadoco kantan search/Keitai-Osagashi service.

Item	Description
docomo service/cloud	
Data usage check	Set counting interval, start/stop measuring, etc. of data communication amount.
SD card backup	You can move and back up phonebook entries, sp-mode mails, bookmarks, etc. using external media such as microSD card. → P.362
Open source licenses	Shows Open source license.
Change home	
docomo LIVE UX	Set the Home screen to docomo LIVE UX.
TouchWiz Basic mode	Set the Home screen to TouchWiz Basic mode.
TouchWiz Easy mode	Set the Home screen to TouchWiz Easy mode.

Information

- Some applications displayed in docomo services can be disabled. Disabled applications may not appear in the list of docomo services.
- By newly downloading an application provided by DOCOMO, an item may be added to the docomo service list.

Accounts and backup

Item	Description
Accounts	→ P.433
Samsung Cloud	Set an account for Samsung cloud services, check the memory usage status, sync settings, etc.
Backup and reset	
Back up my data	Back up the settings, data, etc. of Google application to Google server.
Backup account	Set an account for backup.
Automatic restore	Restore backed up settings and data when re-installing application.

Item	Description
Backup and reset	
Factory data reset	Reset the terminal to the default state. • Data stored in microSD card cannot be erased. To erase data, perform "Formatting microSD card" (P.462). • When you encrypt data saved in a microSD card, decrypt the data (P.441) and then reset the terminal. Otherwise encrypted data cannot be used.

Account

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" → "Accounts"

Item	Description
docomo	Your docomo account is set by default.
Add account	→ P.433

Setting account

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Account" → "Add account"
- 2 Tap an account you want to add
- 3 Set according to the onscreen instructions
 - For the online services requiring log in such as Facebook, enter mail address, password, etc. and tap "Log in"/"ログイン (Log in)".

Information

- To edit a registered account, delete the account and register again.
- To change synchronizing items, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Accounts" → Tap an account type → Tap an account → Mark only items to synchronize.
- To synchronize manually, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Accounts" → Tap an account type → Tap an account to synchronize → "Sync now".

Samsung account

Set up Samsung account to set SIM change alert. Operating the terminal remotely, synchronizing data with Samsung account, etc using Find my mobile (Remote tracking) are also available.

- To set Samsung account, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Accounts" → "Add account" → "Samsung account" → Follow the onscreen instruction.
- For details on Find my mobile (Remote tracking), refer to the following website.
<http://findmymobile.samsung.com/login.do>

Information

- Make sure to note down, etc. the password you set when registering a Samsung account not to forget it. If you forget your Samsung account password, register new password in Find my mobile (Remote tracking).
- ① From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → "Go to the find My mobile webpage" → Select an application
 - Alternatively, access Find my mobile (Remote tracking) web page through a browser.
 - ② "Sign in" → "Find your E-mail or password"
 - ③ Change password according to the onscreen instructions

Setting accounts such as Facebook

Online service accounts such as Facebook, Google can be created on the terminal and you can synchronize or send/receive data between the terminal and each online service server.

- You can set a Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account to synchronize with Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 (or former).

Information

- For setting for each account, perform under the environment where Internet connection is available.
- Depending on country/region, some function such as auto-synchronization may not be available.
- For setting Facebook account, refer to the following website.
<http://www.facebook.com/>
- To set Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account, ask your network administrator for the setting information.

Removing account

When registered account is deleted, the account data saved to the terminal (messages, contacts, settings, etc.) is also deleted.

- The data stored on the server is not deleted.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Accounts" → Tap an account type

2 Tap an account to delete → "Remove account" → "Remove account"

Information

- Some accounts may not be deleted. To delete the account, perform "Factory data reset" (P.432).

Device manager

Item	Description
Date and time	
Automatic date and time	Adjust date and time automatically according to online settings. By default, they are set to be corrected automatically.
Set date* ¹	Set date. To set date manually, unmark "Automatic date and time".
Set time* ¹	Set the time. To set time manually, unmark "Automatic date and time".
Automatic time zone	Set time zone automatically.
Select time zone	Set time zone. To set time zone manually, unmark "Automatic time zone" and make the setting.
Use 24-hour format	Switch clock to 24-hour format.
Select date format	Switch format of year, month and day.

Item	Description
Safety assistance	→ P.445
Accessory	
Dock sound	Set whether to sound when attaching/removing the terminal to/from the dock.
Audio output mode	Set whether to use external speakers connected to the dock when the terminal is connected to the dock.
Desk home screen display	Set whether to show the desk home screen when the terminal is connected to the dock.
Automatic unlock	Set whether to cancel screen lock by opening cover when the terminal is connected to the dock attaching an S View Cover (commercially available) with Screen lock set to Swipe/Touch.
Audio output	Set audio output when connected to an HDMI device.

Item	Description
Application manager	Manage applications in the terminal. Tap a tab at the top of screen to switch "DOWNLOADED"/"SD CARD"/"RUNNING"/"ALL"/"TURNED OFF" tabs. In "ALL" tab, manage installed applications. Also, disable applications not to display on the Apps screen. → P.447
Battery	View battery use, battery level, etc.
Power saving mode	→ P.448
Storage	→ P.449

Item	Description
Security	
Encrypt device ^{*2}	Encrypt data (applications, files, etc.) in the terminal. If it encrypted, entering password is needed each time you turn on the power of the terminal. • It takes long to encrypt the terminal data. Charge the battery fully and then start encrypting while the plug is connected. Keep charging until encryption is complete. • To decrypt, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → Tap "Decrypt device" to operate following onscreen instructions.
Encrypt external SD card ^{*2}	Encrypt data saved in a microSD card no to be used on the other terminal or a PC. • To decrypt, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → "Encrypt external SD card" → Tap "Turn on" and then operate following the onscreen instructions.

Item	Description
Security	
Remote controls	Delete or chase data. For details, refer to Find my mobile (Remote tracking) web page. → P.435
SIM change alert	Send SMS to another mobile phone when the docomo mini UIM card is replaced. → P.456
Go to the find My mobile webpage	Display the website of Find my mobile (Remote tracking).
Reactivation lock	Set whether to prevent from registering other Samsung account after the terminal is reset. • Set Samsung account. • When the function is enabled, enter Samsung account before performing factory data reset.
Set up SIM card lock	→ P.454
Make passwords visible	Set whether to display the entered characters on the password entry screen.
Device administrators	Set whether to enable Device administrators.

Item	Description
Security	
Unknown sources	Set whether to permit installation of applications other than ones provided by Google Play.
Verify apps	Set whether to deny install or display warning before installation of harmfulness application.
Storage type	Show the location for credential storage backup.
Trusted credentials	Display trusted certificates.
Install from device storage ^{*3}	Install certificates from the system memory (terminal).
Clear credentials	Delete all certificates and passwords such as VPN setting information.

Item	Description
About device	
Software update	→ P.540
Status	Display remaining battery, phone number, etc.
Legal information	Open source licenses: Check license agreement of open source. Google legal: Check the Google terms of use. Samsung legal: Check End user license agreement.
Device name	Check/change name of the terminal.
Regulatory information	Display certificate for the Wi-Fi function of the terminal.
Model number	Check model number.
Android version	Check software version.
Baseband version	
Kernel version	
Build number	

- *1 When Google account is set, date and time information may be adjusted automatically.
- *2 Set Screen lock (P.417) to "Password" to use this function. Set "password" with 6 to 16 characters including alphanumeric characters..
- *3 To erase installed certificate, tap "Clear credentials" to erase it from credential storage. Operation of "Clear credentials" erases all certificate in the credential storage.

Safety assistance

Set Safety assistance to ON. You can notify an emergency of the registered recipient via SMS by pressing the upper and lower sides of  (Volume key) at the same time for 3 seconds or longer.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Safety assistance"

2  → Confirm the contents → Mark all items → "OK"

- When an emergency contact screen appears, tap "OK" and then follow onscreen instructions to register an emergency contact.

3 Set required items

Item	Description
Emergency buzzer	Set whether to beep Emergency buzzer when Safety assistance is used. Also set buzzer type.
Edit emergency message	Edit an emergency message.
Message interval	Set an interval of sending emergency message.
Emergency contacts	Set a recipient to be sent an emergency message. Up to 4 emergency contacts can be registered.

Information

- When an emergency is notified,  appears on the status bar. To cancel the emergency, on the Notification panel, tap "Emergency declared" → "Close".

Disabling applications

Disabled application stops its operation and it is not displayed on the Apps screen.

- The application is not uninstalled.
- It is available for some applications or services that cannot be uninstalled.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Application manager" → "ALL" tab

2 Tap an application to disable → "Turn off" → "OK"

Information

- If you disable an application, other applications linking with the disabled application may not be operated correctly. Enable the application again to operate linked applications correctly. To enable again, from the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Application manager" → "TURNED OFF" tab → Tap an application you want to enable → Tap "Turn on".

Power saving

Set for power saving mode.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Power saving mode"

2 Tap 

3 Set required items

Item	Description
Power saving mode settings	
CPU power saving	Limit the maximum performance of CPU.
Screen power saving	Set the display to dim.
Turn off haptic feedback	Turn vibration for tapping screen to OFF to reduce battery power consumption.
Power saving tips	
Learn about power saving	Display methods for saving battery power.

Storage

You can check memory space of microSD card or the terminal, or format microSD card.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Storage"

2 Check/set required items

Item	Description
Device memory	
Total space	Display total memory space of the terminal. Under Total space, amount of stored data such as Apps, Pictures, etc. is displayed in category. Tap an item to check data.
SD card	
Total space*	Display entire memory space of microSD card.
Available space*	Display free memory space of microSD card.
Unmount SD card*/Mount SD card	Unmount/recognize microSD card.
Format SD card*	→ P.462

* Appears only when microSD card is attached.

Information

- When USB storage is attached to the terminal, corresponding items appear.

Security codes used on the terminal

Some functions provided for convenient use of the terminal require the security code to use them. Besides a password for screen lock of the terminal, a network security code necessary for the network services etc. are available. Make use of the terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

- Entered PIN/password for screen lock, network security code, PIN code and PUK code are shown as "●".

■ Notes on the security codes

- Avoid using a number that is easy to guess, such as "birth date", "part of your phone number", "street address number or room number", "1 1 1 1", and "1234". Make sure to make a note of the security code you set lest you should forget it.
- Be very careful not to let others know your security code. If your security code is known by anyone else, DOCOMO shall have no liability for any loss due to any unauthorized use of it.
- If you forget security codes, you should bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the terminal, and docomo mini UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop. For details, contact the "docomo Information Center" on the last page of this manual.
- The PUK code is written on the subscription form (copy for customer) handed at the subscription in the docomo Shop. If you have subscribed at other than docomo Shop, you should bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the docomo mini UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop or contact "docomo Information Center" on the last page of this manual.

■ PIN/password for screen lock

The security code is used for lock function of the terminal.

■ Network security code

The network security code is a 4-digit number necessary for identification or using the docomo Network Services or "お客様サポート (Customer support)" at reception of your request in docomo Shop or at docomo Information Center. It can be set any number at the subscription and also changed later by yourself.

You can change your network security code to the new one using the PC if you have a "docomoID/Password" for General support site for PC "My docomo"*.

You can change by yourself from dmenu.

Operate dmenu → "お客様サポート (Customer support)"* → "各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)". (In Japanese only)

* For "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (Customer support)" (In Japanese only), see P.578.

■ PIN code

You can set security code, named PIN, for the docomo mini UIM card. This code are set to "0000" at the time of subscription. They can be changed by yourself.

PIN is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) that must be entered for user confirmation to prevent unauthorized use of docomo mini UIM card by a third party every time you insert the docomo mini UIM card into the terminal or when the terminal is powered on. You can set entering the PIN code enables making/receiving calls and terminal operations.

- If you use newly purchased the terminal with the docomo mini UIM card you used inserted, use the set PIN code on the former terminal.
- If you enter a incorrect PIN code 3 consecutive times, the PIN code is locked and you cannot use the code. In this case, enter "PIN Unblocking Key" (PUK) to unlock and then set PIN code again.
Enter PUK (8 digits) → "OK" → Enter a new PIN code → "OK" → Enter the PIN code again → Tap "OK".
- In Airplane mode, PIN code entry screen does not appear; when the Air plane mode turns off, PIN code entry screen appears. In Airplane mode, a PIN code entry screen does not appear when docomo mini UIM card is attached to the terminal or turn the power of the terminal on.

■ PUK code

The PUK code is an 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you enter a incorrect PUK code 10 consecutive times, the docomo mini UIM card is locked. If it locked, please contact a docomo Shop.

Setting PIN code

You can set to require the PIN code entry for using the terminal when the power is turned on.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → "Set up SIM card lock" → "Lock SIM card" → Enter current PIN code → "OK"
 - "Lock SIM card" is marked.

Changing PIN code

When "Lock SIM card" (P.454) is set, you can change the PIN code.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → "Set up SIM card lock"
- 2 "Change SIM PIN" → Enter the current PIN code and a new PIN code according to the onscreen instructions

Enabling remote function

Lock and track the device, or delete the data remotely.

1 Set Google account

2 Set Samsung account

- Set Samsung account according to the onscreen instructions.
- Sign in if you have already had a Samsung account.

3 From the Home screen, → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → "Remote controls"*

- If password entry screen for Samsung account appears, enter password → Tap "Confirm".
- When an explanation screen appears, tap "OK".

4 Open Find my mobile (Remote tracking) web page from a PC

- For details on Find my mobile (Remote tracking), refer to the "Samsung account" web page. → P.435

5 After logging in by the Samsung account, follow the onscreen instruction to make settings

- * Since "Remote controls" automatically turns ON if Google and Samsung accounts are registered, they do not need to be operated via terminal. Perform starting from Step 4.

Enabling SIM change alert

You can set to send unique terminal information via SMS to specified phone number if docomo mini UIM card is replaced.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Security" → "SIM change alert"

2 Set Samsung account

- Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Sign in if you have already had a Samsung account.
- If password entry screen for Samsung account appears even though your account has already been set, enter password → Tap "Confirm".

3 Tap 

4 "Alert message" → Enter message displayed in SMS → "OK"

5 "Create" → Enter the phone number for SMS recipient → "OK"

- Enter "+" at the beginning and then country code, phone number without leading "0".
- Japanese country code is "81".
- Tap "Contacts" to select a recipient from the registered contacts.

6 "Save"

Checking your own phone number

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "About device" → "Status"

- Your phone number is displayed in "My phone number".

File management

Storage folder structure

Phone (Internal storage)

Main created folders in the phone (internal storage) by default are as follows.

- Depending on operations on the terminal, displayed folders may differ.

Folder	Description
Alarms	Save music data etc. for alarm sound.
Android	Save setting data or temporary files for the system or applications.
DCIM	Save still image/video data shot by the camera (when the saving location is set to the terminal).
Documents	Save document files.
Download	Save data downloaded by the browser.
Movies	Save video data.
Music	Save music data.

Folder	Description
Notifications	Save files for notifications used by Google+. Or saves music data etc. to be set as notification sound.
Pictures	Save image data of displayed screen (screen capture).
Podcasts	Save podcast data.
Ringtones	Save music data etc. for ringtone or alarm sound.

Information

- When data saved in the folders of "Alarms" / "Notifications" / "Ringtones" is deleted, alarm sound, notification sound or ringtone setting returns to the default.

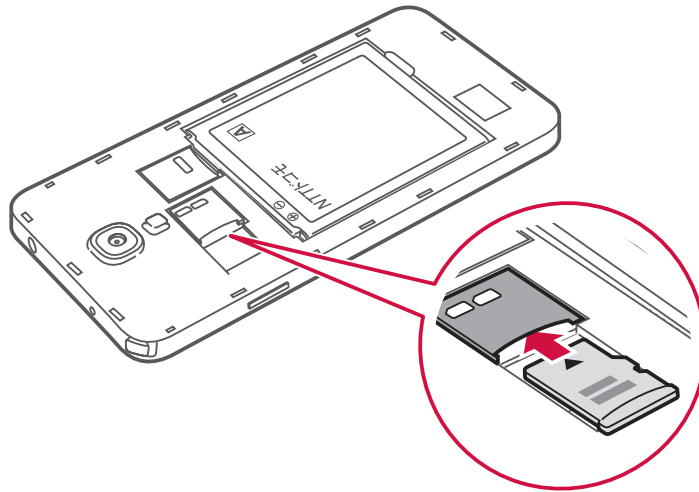
microSD (External storage)

You can attach microSD card (including microSDHC card and microSDXC card) to the terminal and use it.

- The terminal supports microSD card of up to 2 GB, microSDHC card of up to 32 GB and microSDXC card of up to 64 GB (as of October, 2013). However, actual operations are not guaranteed for all microSD cards sold commercially.
For compatible microSD cards, contact each manufacturer of microSD card.
- The terminal supports up to Class 10 speed microSD card.
- microSDXC card can be used only with SDXC compatible devices. Do not insert microSDXC card into a device incompatible with SDXC. Doing so may damage data saved in the microSDXC card.
- To use microSDXC card with the data damaged again, formatting the microSDXC card with SDXC compatible device is needed (All data is erased).
- To copy data to/from SDXC incompatible device, use memory card compatible with the standard of device for copying to/from such as microSDHC card or microSD card.

Attaching microSD card

- 1** Remove the back cover (P.57)
- 2** With the metal contacts facing down, insert the microSD card into the microSD card slot in the direction of arrow mark until it is fixed
 - When you insert it in the correct direction, the microSD card hits lightly to a guide inside of the microSD card slot. Insert it all the way until it clicks.

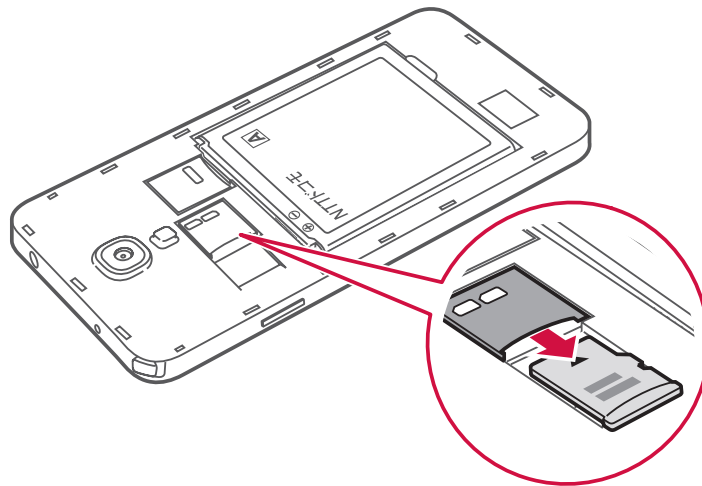


- 3** Attach the back cover (P.58)

Removing microSD card

To remove the microSD card, perform "Unmount SD card" (P.449).

- 1** Remove the back cover (P.57)
- 2** Push the microSD card attached to the terminal lightly
 - The microSD card is out a little.
- 3** Pull microSD card straight out in direction of arrow mark



- 4** Attach the back cover (P.58)

Information

- Watch out for jumping out the microSD card when removing.

Formatting microSD card

Note that formatting microSD card erases all data in the microSD card.

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "Storage"

2 "Format SD card" → "Format SD card" → "Delete all"

- When the unlock screen appears, perform unlocking method and then tap "Delete all".

File operation

Handling files and folders

Use "My Files" to display or manage various data such as still images, videos, music or document saved on the terminal, microSD card or Dropbox.

1 From the Home screen, → "My Files"

- A shortcut list screen for each folder appears. By default, shortcuts of "All", "Images", "Videos", "Music", "Documents", "Downloaded apps", "Dropbox", "Recent files" are registered. You can add shortcuts (P.464).

2 Tap a shortcut of folder you want to use → Tap a folder as required

- Folders/files list screen appears.
- If there is no shortcut you want to use or you use file saved in microSD card. "All" → "Device storage"(the terminal) / "SD memory card" (microSD card) → Tap a folder you want to use.
- When you touch and hold a folder/file to mark, the following items appear.

Item	Description
	Share files using online services, send files via Bluetooth or attaching to mail, or use files on other applications.
	Delete folders/files.

3 Tap a file you want to use

- Display/play the file.

Creating shortcuts

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Tap  → "Add shortcut" → "OK"
- 3 Select a folder you want to register → "Done"

Renaming shortcuts

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Touch and hold  you want to rename → "Rename" → Enter name → "OK"

Deleting shortcuts

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Touch and hold  you want to delete → "Delete" → "OK"

Creating a folder

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Tap a shortcut of folder → Tap a folder as required
- 3  → "Create folder" → Enter name of the folder → "OK"

Information

- Folder can be created in the "All" folder and linked folders of added shortcuts.

Renaming a file or folder

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Tap a shortcut of folder → Tap a folder as required
- 3 Touch and hold a folder/file →  → "Rename" → Enter name → "OK"

Information

- Folder can be renamed in the "All" folder and linked folders of added shortcuts.

Deleting a file or folder

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Tap a shortcut of folder → Tap a folder as required
- 3 Touch and hold a folder/file →  → "OK"

Information

- Folder can be deleted in the "All" folder and linked folders of added shortcuts.

Moving/Copying a file or folder

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "My Files"
- 2 Tap a shortcut of folder → Tap a folder as required
- 3 Touch and hold a folder/file →  → "Move"/"Copy"
- 4 Display a folder to move to → "Move here"/"Paste here"

Menu of My files

The following items appear when tapping  on the shortcut list screen or folders/files list screen.

□ Shortcut list screen

Item	Description
Delete shortcuts*	Delete a shortcut.
Add FTP	Set FTP.
Scan for nearby devices	Scan DLNA devices. → P.486
Settings	
Show hidden files	Set whether to display hidden files.
Show file extension	Set whether to display file extension.

* Appears only when there is an added shortcut.

❑ Folders/files list screen

Item	Description
Select item ^{*1}	Select displayed folders/files.
Create folder ^{*2}	Create new folders.
View as	Set display mode in list.
Sort by ^{*3}	Change display order of the list.
Add shortcut ^{*2}	Add a shortcut to the shortcut list screen.
Settings	→ P.467

*1 Does not appear on the folders/files list screen where no folders or files are listed.

*2 Does not appear in the folders/files list screen for shortcuts registered by default.

*3 Does not appear on the folders/files list screen in "Recent files".

Data search

1 On the shortcut list screen or folder/file list screen, 

2 Enter a file name or extension → 

- Searched files are displayed in a list.
- Tap  to select search conditions.

Data communication

Bluetooth

You can transfer data between the terminal and Bluetooth device wirelessly.

- For Bluetooth compatible version or profile, see "Main specifications" (P.543).
- For setting or operations, refer to the user manual of Bluetooth device to connect.
- The terminal does not connect wirelessly with all types of Bluetooth devices.

■ Notes on using Bluetooth function

1. Connect the terminal to the other Bluetooth device within 10 m of vistaed distance. Depending on the environment (wall, furniture, etc.) or structure of building, available distance for connecting may be extremely small.
2. Keep more than 2 m away from the other device (electronic products, AV equipment, OA equipment etc.) and connect it. Always keep more than 3 m away from a microwave oven because it strongly affects the connection when it is operated. If it is near, the connection may not be established properly when the other device power on. Or the connection may cause noises on TV or radio or the image may be distorted.
3. Under strong ambient signals, connection may not be established.

4. Radio waves emitted by a Bluetooth device may affect electronic medical equipment. Turn off the terminal and other Bluetooth devices in a train, aircraft or hospital, near an automatic door or fire alarm, and at a place where flammable gases are generated such as a gas station.

■ Reception interference caused by wireless LAN devices

The terminal's Bluetooth function and wireless LAN devices use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). If you use the terminal near a wireless LAN device, reception interference may occur or the communications speed may lower. Also, you may hear noise or have a connection problem. In these cases, do the following:

1. Keep the Bluetooth device over 20 m away from a wireless LAN device.
2. Within 20 m, turn off either the Bluetooth device or the wireless LAN device.

■ Bluetooth pass code

Pass code is an authentication code to enter when accessing Bluetooth devices for the first time to recognize and permit the connection each other. Entering the same pass code (up to 16 Half-width alphanumeric characters) on each sending/receiving device is required.

- On the terminal, pass code may be displayed as "PIN", "passkey".

Enabling Bluetooth function and making your terminal detectable

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Bluetooth"
- 2 Tap 
- 3 Tap 
- 4 "Visibility timeout" → **Select an item**
 - Your terminal becomes detectable by another Bluetooth device within a set time.
 - When "Never timeout" is set, your terminal is always detectable by another Bluetooth device.

Information

- When you do not use Bluetooth function, turn it OFF to save the battery.
- The setting of the Bluetooth ON/OFF is not changed even when the power is turned off.
- Mark "(Device name of the terminal)" to show the terminal from other Bluetooth devices.
- Tap "Scan" to re-search Bluetooth devices.
-  → Tap "Received files" to display received file.
-  → Tap "Help" to display Bluetooth function help.

Pairing/Connecting with Bluetooth device

To transfer data between your terminal and other Bluetooth device, perform pairing with the device and register it to the terminal beforehand. And then perform connection.

- Depending on Bluetooth device, only pairing may be performed or pairing and connection may be performed successively.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Bluetooth"

2 Tap 

- Detected Bluetooth devices are displayed by list.
- If no Bluetooth devices are displayed, tap "Scan" to re-search.

3 Tap a device you want to connect

4 Confirm a pass code or enter pass code (PIN) → "OK"

- Even for devices requiring entry of pass code when pairing, once pairing is performed, entering pass code is not necessary for next connection.

When the other device requests for pairing

When pairing request for Bluetooth communication screen appears, tap "OK" or enter a pass code (PIN) → "OK".

Canceling connection

On the Bluetooth device list, tap a connected device → Tap "OK".

Canceling pairing

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Bluetooth"
- 2 Tap 
- 3  of a device you want to cancel → "Unpair"

Sending/Receiving data via Bluetooth

- Set the Bluetooth function to ON beforehand to be detectable.

Sending data via Bluetooth

You can send contacts (contact data in vcf format) or files such as still images or videos, etc. to a device (PC etc.) compatible with Bluetooth.

- For sending, perform the operation from the menu such as "Share" or "Send" of each application.

Receiving data via Bluetooth

1 If "File transfer" screen appears, tap "Accept"

-  appears on the status bar and data reception starts.
- Reception condition can be checked by the Notification panel.
- After completion of the reception, display Notification panel and tap "Bluetooth share: Received" to display the list of received data. Tap data you want to view/play, you can check received data.

NFC communication

NFC is an abbreviation of Near Field Communication that is an international standard proximity wireless communication method specified by ISO (International Organization for Standardization). By using reader/writer function (R/W) or device communication function (P2P), put the terminal close to NFC tag to receive data, or send/receive data to/from other device with NFC module installed.

- For holding over the other device, see P.260.

Enabling NFC Reader/Writer, P2P function

To send/receive data between the terminal and an NFC equipped mobile phone etc., turn Reader/Writer, P2P on.

- When "Android Beam" is set to ON, you can send/receive contents such as web pages or contacts to/from a device with P2P function installed.
- When "S Beam" is set to ON, you can send/receive files such as still image, video, documents, etc. to/from S Beam compatible device using P2P and Wi-Fi Direct function.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Setting"

2 Tap for "Reader/Writer, P2P"

- To use Android Beam, tap  of "Android Beam".
- To use S Beam, tap  of "S Beam".

Sending/Receiving data

1 Display a content to send on the terminal/recipient device

2 Put marks of the terminal and the recipient device closer

- When the software license agreement is displayed, follow the onscreen instructions to start IC Tag/Barcode Reader use.

3 Tap a screen on the terminal/perform sending operation on the recipient device

- The content is sent/received.
- If the application selection screen appears, select an application to use.

Information

- If you perform sending operations from the terminal and the other device at the same time, sending may fail.
- While the screen is locked, NFC tag information cannot be sent/received.
- When NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock is set, Android Beam cannot be used.
- For some applications, Android Beam is unavailable.
- Actual communications are not guaranteed for all devices equipped with Reader/Writer, P2P.

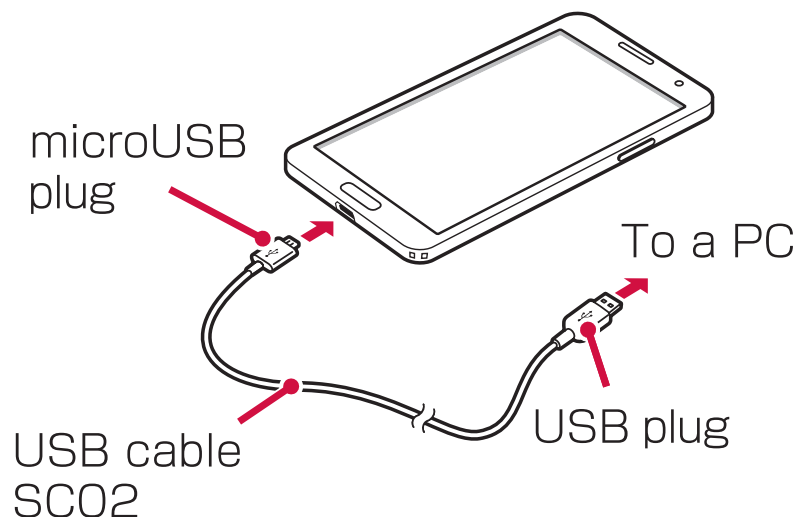
External device connection

Connecting to a PC

Connecting with USB cable SC02

When you connect the terminal with PC via USB cable SC02, you can synchronize data with "Samsung Kies" (P.479) on a PC, or recognize the terminal as media device (P.480).

- 1** Insert microUSB plug of USB cable SC02 into the external connection jack and connect the terminal to a PC
 - Insert the microUSB plug with facing  printed side up horizontally.



Information

- Connect the USB plug of USB cable SC02 directly to the USB connector of a PC. If you connect it via USB hub or USB extension cable, it may not work properly.
- Do not remove USB cable SC02 while data is transferred. It may cause damage of data.
- The connectable OS are Windows XP (Service Pack 3 or later), Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Windows 8.

Using Samsung Kies

Media files such as music/video and personal information can be managed, and the software of the terminal can be updated by using Samsung Kies.

- You can download Samsung Kies from Samsung's homepage and install it into your computer. For more information, see Samsung's homepage.

<http://www.samsung.com/jp/support/usefulsoftware/KIES/JSP> (In Japanese)

1 Connect the terminal with computer by USB cable SC02

- For connecting method, see "Connecting with USB cable SC02" (P.478).

2 Start up "Samsung Kies" on a PC

- For how to use Samsung Kies, refer to "Kies Tutorial" of the help menu.

Using as media device

Connect the terminal and a PC with included USB cable SC02. The terminal is recognized as a media device (MTP) and you can transfer media files such as music or videos.

1 Connect the terminal to PC via USB cable SC02

- For connecting method, see "Connecting with USB cable SC02" (P.478).

2 Open the Notification panel → Check if "Connected as a media device" is displayed

- When "Connected as a camera" is displayed, "Connected as a camera" → Mark "Media device (MTP)".

3 Operate the PC to transfer data between the terminal and the PC

Using as camera device

Connect the terminal and a PC with included USB cable SC02 and turn to camera (PTP) mode. You can transfer still images and videos to the PC.

- Use Camera (PTP) mode for transferring data to a PC etc. that is not compatible to MTP.

1 Connect the terminal and a PC with USB cable SC02

- For connecting method, see "Connecting with USB cable SC02" (P.478).

2 Open the Notification panel → "Connected as a media device" → Mark "Camera (PTP)"

3 Operate PC to transfer data between the terminal and the PC

Samsung Link

Share files with online storage and other devices in Samsung Link.

- To use Samsung Link, you need to set Samsung account.
- Depending on device type, some files may not be played.

Setting Samsung Link

1 From the Home screen, → "Samsung Link"

- Tap "Get started" on the screen displayed for the first activation.
- If Connect via mobile network notification screen appears, confirm and tap "Connect".
- If "Introduction" screen or "Tutorial" screen appears, confirm the content and then tap "OK".
- If your Samsung account is not set, tap "Sign in" to sign in to your Samsung account.

2 → "Settings" → Set each item

Item	Description
Registered storage	Manage online storage.
Save to	Set a saving location of contents downloaded from Samsung Link.

Item	Description
Auto upload	Make settings for uploading still images or videos shot by the terminal automatically to online storage or other device.
Video optimization	Set whether to play videos in quality most suitable to the device.
Password lock	Set to request Samsung account password when Samsung Link is activated.
My account	Check the profile of Samsung account you signed in, change a password or check the terms of use or help.
About this service	Display version and license information of Samsung Link.

Uploading files in the terminal to other device

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Samsung Link" → Flick the screen to the right
- 2 Tap the terminal from "Registered devices"
- 3 Tap a file type tab →  → Mark files to upload
- 4  → Tap uploading destination
 - Uploading starts.
 - To cancel uploading, open the Notification panel, "Transferring file..." → Tap .

Playing files in online storage or other device on the terminal

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Samsung Link" → Flick the screen to the right
- 2 From "Registered devices" or "Registered storage", tap a device or storage for playback
 - If any device or storage is not displayed, tap  → "Refresh" to scan again.

3 Perform operation to play the file on the terminal

Information

- Depending on network connection or status of recipient device, play may be interrupted.

Connecting to printer

You can print on a compatible printer via Wi-Fi or USB connection.

- When using Wi-Fi function, make settings for wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) and printer in advance.
- When using Wi-Fi function, the terminal and printer are needed to be connected to the same Wi-Fi network or connected via Wi-Fi Direct.
- For compatible connection cables when using USB connection, refer to the instruction manual of the printer.

Printing with printer

1 On a screen of application that printing is available, → "Print"

- A print preview screen appears. When a confirmation screen is displayed, tap "OK".
- For the first time of printing, a printer selection screen appears. Select a printer to use and go to Step 3.

2 Tap

- The printer settings screen appears.

3 Set each item → Tap on the top of the screen

- The print preview screen reappears.

4 Tap

- To cancel printing, tap .

Information

- Depending on printer type, items displayed on a settings screen differ.

Connecting DLNA device

Use Wi-Fi function to share and play the terminal media files on other client device (DLNA: Digital Living Network Alliance).

- To use this function, connect the terminal and device to be accessed to the same Wi-Fi network in advance.
- The terminal does not connect with all DLNA devices.
- The terminal is DTCP-IP compatible. However, the terminal does not connect with all DTCP-IP devices.
- The terminal does not play all media files saved on DLNA devices.

Setting nearby device

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Nearby devices"

2 Set each item

Item	Description
Device name	Device name of the terminal appears.
Advanced	
Shared contents	Select contents to be shared.
Allowed devices list	Display a list of devices that is allowed to access the terminal.
Not-allowed devices list	Display a list of devices that is not allowed to access the terminal.
Download to	Set a saving location of media files that is uploaded to the terminal from the other device.
Upload from other devices	Set action of the terminal when media file is uploaded.

Information

- To delete devices added to Allowed devices list/Not-allowed devices list, from "Allowed devices list"/"Not-allowed devices list" → Mark devices to delete → Tap "Delete".

Registering DLNA device for accessing the terminal

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "Nearby devices"
- 2** Tap 
 - When a confirmation screen asking if you permit access from the other device appears, go to Step 4.
 -  is displayed on the status bar.
- 3** Perform connecting operation on the device to be accessed to the terminal
 - A confirmation screen asking if you permit to access appears.
- 4** "OK"
 - The terminal is connected to the accessed device and the device will be added to the Allowed devices list (P.487).
 - To reject access, tap "Cancel". The device will be added to Not-allowed devices list (P.487).
- 5** Perform play operation from the accessed device

Group Play

Connect with a Group Play equipped device and share songs, images, document, games to view/play. To use Group Play, create a group on the terminal or join to a group created on other device.

1 From the Home screen, → "Group Play"

- Group Play top screen appears.
- When disclaimer appears, read the content and then tap "Agree".

Information

- For details on Group Play, on the Group Play screen,  → Tap "Help" to refer.
- While using Group Play, Internet connection is not available.

Creating a group

1 On the Group Play top screen, "Create group"

2 Enter group password → "OK"

- Set 1- to 16-digit numbers for group password.
- Unmarking "Set group password" on the Group Play top screen hides group password setting screen. Go to Step 3.
- If Wi-Fi tethering screen appears, read the content and then tap "OK".

- If Group Play tips screen appears, read the content and then tap "OK".

3 Select an item

Item	Description
Share music	Select songs to be shared. Connect with 2 devices or more to enjoy surround sound.
Share images	Select pictures to be shared.
Share video	Select video to be shared.
Share documents	Select document to be shared.
Play games and more	Select games to be shared.

4 Mark content to be shared → "Done"

- For images, mark images to be shared → Tap .
- For document, tap  of document to be shared → Tap "Done".
- For games, tap a game to play.
- When any icons are not displayed, tap the screen to display.

Item	Description
	Switch to the drawing mode and draw memo etc. on a photo or document to share.

Item	Description
	Switch to the collage mode to overlay shared photos.
	Add photos or document to be shared.
	Toggle between single vision on which you can share a video playback screen and separate vision for which a video is divided and played back on multiple screens.
	Check participants to Group Play.
	Set surround sound of shared music.
	Switch to music play screen.

Joining to a group

- 1 On the Group Play top screen, "Join group"
 - If group password entry screen appears, enter password set by the terminal where the group is created.
 - If there are multiple groups available to join, tap a group (mobile AP) to participate. Tap "Scan" to update group search result.

Displaying on the TV screen via HML connection

Connect the terminal with an HDMI compatible TV to display videos or images on the TV screen.

- To connect the terminal with an HDMI compatible TV, an HDMI cable compatible with HDMI jack (Type A) (commercial item) and HDMI cable SC03 (optional) are required.
- Also the terminal can be connected with an MHL compatible TV using an MHL cable (commercially item).
- The terminal does not connect with all HDMI devices.

1 Connect an HDMI cable to HDMI cable

- For instructions on how to connect the HDMI cable, refer to the instruction manual for the HDMI cable

2 Connect HDMI cable to HDMI jack of the TV

- For instructions on how to connect to the HDMI jack and switch input ports, refer to the instruction manual for your TV system.

3 Connect HDMI cable to the external connection jack of the terminal

- If HDMI cable is unplugged while viewing on the TV, the TV goes into the connection standby mode for a certain period of time.

Information

- If connected to a non-HDCP-compatible TV, images and audio cannot be output correctly. Also there are contents restricted to be output by contents providers output is sometimes not available due to performance issues.
- When MHL output is started, depending on the connected TV, input port may not be switched and images may not be displayed. In such case, change TV settings.
- Do not lift the terminal with holding the HDMI cable connected.
- Remove HDMI cable when you do not display on a TV.
- Depending on the situation, the MHL connection may affect the signal condition.

International roaming

Overview of international roaming (WORLD WING)

The international roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows you to use the same phone number and Email address as ones used in Japan within the service area of overseas network operator that is associated with DOCOMO. You can use without changing of call and SMS settings.

■ Supported network

The terminal is a Class 4 device. You can use the terminal in 3G network and GSM/GPRS network service area. Services are also available in countries and areas supporting 3G850MHz/GSM850MHz. Check supported area. For areas out of Xi area such as overseas, connect to 3G or GSM/GPRS network.

■ Before using the terminal overseas, refer to the followings

- "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
- DOCOMO International Services website

Information

- For country codes/international call access codes/universal number international prefix, supported countries/areas and network operators, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website.

Available services

(○: Available)

Main Communication services	3G	3G 850	GSM (GPRS)
Call	○	○	○
SMS	○	○	○
Email*	○	○	○
Browser*	○	○	○

- * To use data communication when roaming, turn ON the data roaming settings (P.506).

Information

- Some services are not available depending on the overseas network operator or network.

Before using the terminal

Checking before leaving Japan

Check the following for using terminal overseas before leaving Japan.

■ Subscription

- Confirm your application status of WORLD WING. For details, contact "docomo Information Center" on the last page of this manual.

■ Charging

- Use optional "AC Adapter O3" or "AC Adapter O4" for charging when traveling overseas.

■ Usage fee

- Overseas usage charge (call and packet communication) differs from those in Japan.
- As some applications automatically perform packet communications, the packet communication charge may become expensive. For each application, confirm with your application provider by yourselves.

Preset

■ Network service

If you subscribed to network services, Voice mail service, Call forwarding service and Caller ID request service are available from overseas. However, some network services may not be used.

- To use network services overseas, you need to activate "Remote operation settings" (P.183). Alternatively, you can set "Remote operation (charged)" (P.186) overseas.
- Depending on overseas network operators to connect, network services may not be used even if it can be activate/deactivate.

Checking in the country you stay

When you arrive overseas and turn on the terminal, an available network is automatically connected.

■ Connection

The optimum network will be selected automatically if "Select automatically" is selected for "Available networks" in "Network operators". When you use a network operator of a country/region covered by the flat-rate service, you can use the service with flat-rate packet communication charges overseas up to the specified upper limit per day. Also, you need to subscribe packet flat-rate service in Japan to use it. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

■ Display

A network type in use is displayed on the status bar.

Icon	Network type
	International roaming in use (Radio signal reception Weak/Strong)
	GPRS network usable/communicating
	3G network usable/communicating
	HSDPA network usable/communicating

- Connected network operators are viewable on the Notification panel.

■ Setting clock

When you mark "Automatic date and time", "Automatic time zone" in "Date and time", the clock time or time difference of the terminal is corrected by receiving information about time or time difference from the network overseas operator.

- Depending on the network provided by overseas network operator, time/time difference correction may not be performed correctly. Set the time zone manually if it is not performed correctly.
- Correction timing varies by overseas network operator in connection.
- "Date and time" (P.438)

■ About inquiries

- If the terminal or the docomo mini UIM card is misplaced or stolen overseas, immediately contact DOCOMO from the spot and request for suspension of usage. Please see the last page of this manual for contact information. Be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after misplacement or stealage.
- For contact from a land-line phone etc., add "International call access code" or "Universal number international prefix" assigned to the countries.

Making/Receiving calls in the country you stay

Making a call to outside country you stay (including Japan)

You can make a call from the country you stay to other country using the international roaming service.

- For information of available countries or network operators, see DOCOMO International Services website.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Dial"

2 + (Touch and hold "0") → Country code → Area code (city code) → Enter a phone number of the other party

- Please omit the prefix "0" in the area code (city code). However, "0" may be required to dial to some countries or areas such as Italy.

3  → "Call to <Country>"/"Call without int'l prefix"

- In <Country name>, the country name set in "Country code" of "International dial assist". For example, for "日本 (JPN)" (+81), "Call to 日本 (JPN) " appears.

4 When the call ends, "End call"

Making a call within the country you stay

You can make a call to a land-line phone or mobile phone in the same way as in Japan.

- 1 From the Home screen,  → "Dial"
- 2 Enter a phone number of the other party
- 3 Tap 
- 4 When the call ends, "End call"

Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

If you call to the other party who is overseas "WORLD WING" user, even when he/she is in the country you stay, please make an international call to Japan.

- Regardless of in what country you stay, the communication is always performed via Japan. Add prefix "+" and "81" (Country code of Japan), just like when you make an international call to Japan, and then entering a phone number omitting leading "0".

Receiving a call in the country you stay

You can receive a call in the same way as in Japan.

Information

- When you receive a call during the international roaming, regardless of which country the call is from, it is forwarded internationally from Japan. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and the receiver is charged for a reception fee.
- Even if the other party calls with the caller ID notified, depending on the overseas network operator, the caller ID may not be notified. Or depending on the network the other party uses, the caller ID may be notified in the different number from the other party's caller ID.
- For overseas use, "Call rejection" may not work (P.193).

Making a call from the other party

■ To have the other party in Japan call you overseas

Have the other party dial a phone number in the same way as in Japan.

■ To have the other party make a call from the outside Japan to the country you stay

Regardless of countries, you will receive a call via Japan. The other party should dial with prefix an international access code and "81" (Country code of Japan).

International access code of the country the dialer stays -81-90 (or 80) -XXXX-XXXX

International roaming settings

When you use the terminal overseas, switching to network available in the country you stay is required. By default, the terminal is set to automatically search and switch to an available network. You can also change the settings manually.

Setting network mode

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks" → "Network mode"

2 Tap the network mode to be used

Item	Description
LTE/3G/ GSM (Auto)	Select from LTE network, 3G network or GSM/GPRS network automatically.
LTE/3G	Use LTE network or 3G network.
GSM only	Use only GSM/GPRS networks.

Information

- LTE network is not available overseas.

Checking available network operator and setting it manually

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks" → "Network operators"

- A list of searched network operator's name appears.
- When an information screen appears, tap "OK".
- To search again, tap "Search networks".
- Displayed network operators vary depending on "Network mode" (P.504) settings.

2 Tap a network operator name to connect

Information

- Depending on network condition or signal status, scanning result may not be displayed.
- If you set a connecting network operator manually, the terminal cannot be connected automatically to the other network operator when you move out of the service area.
- If you set a connecting network operator manually, it is recommended to set "Select automatically" when you return to Japan.

Selecting available network operator automatically

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks" → "Network operators"
 - When an information screen appears, tap "OK".
- 2** "Select automatically"
 - When an information screen appears, tap "OK".

Setting data roaming

- 1** From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "Connections" tab → "More networks" → "Mobile networks"
- 2** Mark "Data roaming"
- 3** "OK"

After returning to Japan

When you return to Japan, the terminal automatically searches a network and is connected to DOCOMO's network. If you do not connect it, set the followings.

- Set "Network mode" of "Mobile networks" to "LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)" (P.504).
- Set "Network operators" of "Mobile networks" to "Select automatically" (P.506).

Introduction of options and related devices

Combining the terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area. For details, contact a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop.

For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery Pack SC1 1
- Back Cover SC1 2
- SM-V700
- AC Adaptor SC04
- HDMI cable SC03
- USB cable SC02
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01^{*1}
- Wireless Earphone Set 03^{*1}
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 02^{*1}
- Carry Case 02
- Pocket charger 01/02
- AC Adaptor 03/04
- AC Adapter Converter Plug TypeC 01
- Micro USB Cable 01
- DC Adapter 03
- DriveNetCradle 01
- L-03E^{*2}
- SmartTV dstick 01

- *1 You can connect to the terminal via Bluetooth communication.
- *2 Works as a charger to feed the battery.

Information

- To connect the terminal with an external device, always connect HDMI cable SC03 to an HDMI cable (commercial item) to use.

Sample

- Sample is not covered by the warranty for free cost of repair.
- Specification or appearance of sample is subject to change without prior notice for performance upgrade.

Stereo Headset with Microphone

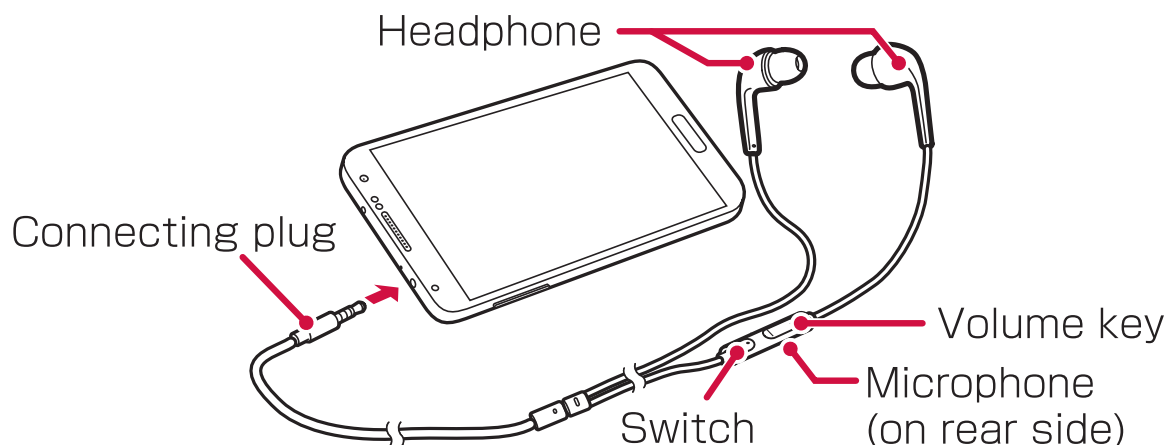
- Use Stereo Headset with Microphone (sample). If you use another earphone with microphone, playback sound etc. may be hard to hear.

How to use

1 Insert the connecting plug of Stereo Headset with Microphone to the headphone connection jack of the terminal

- While displaying the Home screen etc., press the switch to operate the followings.
 - Play/pause music
 - Receive/end a call
- While displaying the Home screen etc., press the switch for over 1 second to activate S Voice and operate.
- Press volume key to adjust the volume.
- Firmly insert the connecting plug to the end. If the connecting plug stays on the way, sound may not be heard.

- Take care so that cord of Stereo Headset with Microphone does not get entangled with you, surrounding people or objects.



- When you finished using it, pull out the connecting plug from the headphone connection jack horizontally.

■ When the size of earpieces does not fit
 Earpieces in 2 different sizes are supplied with Stereo Headset with Microphone other than earpieces attached in advance. Change the earpieces if it does not fit in size.

Main specifications

Connector shape	3.5 mm stereo mini plug
Impedance	32 Ω
Maximum input	40 mW (1.13V)
Maximum output	95 +/- 3dB
Size	Length: Approx. 1260 mm
Weight	Approx. 13.2 g

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

- First, check if software update is needed and if it is necessary, update the software (P.540).
- When problems do not improve after checking the following items, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the last page (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.

□ Power

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot turn on the terminal (cannot use the terminal).	• Is the battery pack installed correctly? → P.57 • Is the battery exhausted? → P.62
Screen is frozen, cannot turn off the power.	• Restart the terminal forcibly by pressing and holding  for 8-10 seconds when the screen is frozen or you cannot turn the power off. * Note that data and the settings may be erased since the operation restart forcibly.

□ Charging

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot charge the terminal (Notification LED does not light, or flashes).	• Is the battery pack installed correctly? → P.57 • Is the adapter or cigarette lighter connector correctly inserted to an outlet or cigarette lighter socket? • Are the adapter, accessory USB Cable SC02 and the terminal set correctly? • When using included USB Cable SC02, does the power of the PC turn on? • If you execute calls, communications or other operation for a long time while charging, the terminal may become hot and charging may be unavailable. In this case, wait until the temperature of the terminal drops down and retry charging.

□ Operating terminal

Trouble	Check and remedy
Become hot while operating/charging.	• While operating or charging, or if you operate applications or watch 1 Seg for a long time while charging, the terminal, battery pack or adapter may become hot. There is no operation problems and you can continue to use it.
The operation time is short.	• Is the terminal left for a long time out of service area? Staying outside of the service area may consume much power to search available radio waves for communication. • The operating time of the battery pack varies depending on the operating environment and the secular degradation of the battery pack. • The battery pack is a consumable accessory. The usage duration of the battery per 1 charge decreases gradually each time the battery is recharged. When the operation time is too short even the terminal is fully charged, purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.

Trouble	Check and remedy
Power is automatically turned off or the terminal is automatically restarted.	• If the terminal of battery pack is dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut OFF. When it is dirty, clean the battery pack with a dry cotton swab etc.
No operation is performed even when tapping the touch screen.	• Is the screen locked? Unlock the screen by pressing  / . → P.67, P.417
The touch screen reacts slowly when a screen is tapped.	• It may be occurred when large amount of data is saved in the terminal or transferring large-size data between the terminal and microSD card. • Do you attach a protection sheet on the terminal? The operations may be impeded by the protection sheet. • If the surface of the display is scratched or damaged, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.
The docomo mini UIM card is not recognized.	• Is the docomo mini UIM card installed with a correct direction? → P.55

Trouble	Check and remedy
Time is incorrect.	It may be occurred if the terminal keeps turned on for a long time. Check if "Automatic date and time" is set to ON, and turn on the terminal at places where signal is strong. → P.438

Trouble	Check and remedy
Terminal becomes unstable.	• It may be caused by applications installed to the terminal after purchase. If problems improve when you start in Safe mode, problems may be improved by uninstalling the application. * Safe mode is a function to activate the phone in a mode similar to default. - To start Safe mode Press  for 2 seconds or more when power is OFF, and after docomo logo disappears, continue to press  (lower of the Volume key). * When Safe mode starts, "Safe mode" appears on the lower left corner of Home screen. * To terminate Safe mode, restart the terminal. - For using Safe mode, back-up the required data beforehand. - Note that widget you created may be removed.

Trouble	Check and remedy
Terminal becomes unstable.	- Safe Mode is not normal activation. Usually exit Safe Mode and then use the terminal.
Terminal reacts slowly/ Behaviors become unstable/ Some of the program cannot activate.	• Confirm the internal memory usage of the terminal and obtain memory by ending some activated programs. → P.138
Data is not displayed properly/ Cannot operate the touch screen properly.	• Turn off and on the power. If it does not solve the problem, trying "Factory data reset" (P.432) may improve the symptoms. Note that the operation erases all data saved on the terminal. Make sure to back up necessary data beforehand.
Application does not work properly (cannot activate, errors occur frequently, etc.).	• Are there any applications being disabled? Enable the disabled applications and try again. → P.447

□ Calling

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot make a call even though Call key is tapped.	• Is the docomo mini UIM card installed to the terminal correctly? → P.55 • Is the terminal set to Airplane mode? → P.392
The ringtone does not sound.	• Is the terminal set to Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate)? → P.404 • Is "Ringtones" set to "Silent"? → P.406 • Is "Ringtone" of "Volume" set to 0? → P.405 • Is "Auto reject mode" set to "All numbers" or "Auto reject numbers"? → P.186 • Is the terminal set to Airplane mode? → P.392 • Is the ring time of Voice mail service or Call forwarding to "0 sec."? → P.182 • Is the Play after of Recorded messages set to "0 sec."? → P.179

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot connect calls ("out of area" does not disappear even when you change the location, or cannot make/receive a call even when radio wave when strong).	• Turn the power off and on, or remove and attach the battery pack or docomo mini UIM card. → P.55, P.57, P.65 • Due to the radio wave types, making/receiving calls may be unavailable even in the service area and even when strong radio wave is indicated in 4 signal mark (▬▬▬▬). Move to the other place and call again. • Check if you set "Auto reject mode"? → P.186 • Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/mails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. In that case, "Please wait for a while(Voice service)./ Please wait for a while(Data service)." appears and calling sound is played. Move to other place or call again at other time.
Cannot connect to network.	• Do you use at a place where signal is weak? • Turning the terminal power OFF and then turning ON again may work for the restoration. → P.65

□ Display

Trouble	Check and remedy
The display is dimmed.	• Is the time set on "Screen timeout" over? → P.402 • Do you adjust the brightness of the display? → P.407 • Is Power saving mode set? → P.448 • Is "Auto adjust screen tone" marked? If marked, screen tone will be adjusted according to the selected image. → P.403 • Is the battery level low? → P.440

□ Volume

Trouble	Check and remedy
During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to be heard to or too loud.	• Do you change the listening volume? → P.171, P.174

□ Mail

Trouble	Check and remedy
Mail is not received automatically.	• Do you unmark "Sync Email"? Mark it. → P.223 • Do you set "Set sync schedule" to "Manual"? Set Sync schedule. → P.223
Attached file is deleted and cannot view images.	• Check "Size to retrieve emails". → P.223

□ Camera

Trouble	Check and remedy
Still images and videos shot with the camera are blurred.	• Check if clouds or dirt attach to the lens of camera. • Set face detection to ON when you take a portrait. → P.304 • Set Smart stabilization/ Video stabilization to ON. → P.305
Error messages appear when trying to start Camera.	• Confirm the battery usage. → P.440 • Confirm the memory usage. → P.449 • Press and hold  for 1 second or longer to display the Device option screen, then tap "Restart" to restart the terminal.

□ 1Seg

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot watch 1Seg.	• Are you in an area where outside the digital terrestrial broadcasting area or where an airwave is weak? • Check if you set area information. → P.293

□ Osaifu-Keitai

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai.	• If you remove the battery pack or activate Omakase Lock, Osaifu-Keitai function cannot be used regardless of NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock settings. • Check if you activate NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock. → P.261 • Check if you hold the  mark position on the terminal over a reader. → P.260

□ International roaming

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot use the terminal overseas.	■ If the signal mark is displayed • Do you subscribe to WORLD WING? Check the subscription of WORLD WING. ■ If "out of area" is displayed • Are you out of the service area of the international roaming service or in weak radio wave area? Check if it is available service area or overseas network operator with "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DOCOMO International Services website. • Try to change the network settings or settings for overseas communication operator. Set "Network mode" to "LTE/3G/GSM (Auto)". → P.504 Set "Network operators" to "Select automatically". → P.506 • It may recover by turning the terminal OFF and ON again. → P.65

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot use data communication overseas.	Set Data roaming to ON. → P.506
The terminal cannot be used suddenly while you use it overseas.	Is the limit of maximum charges for use exceeded? A limit of maximum charges for use is set beforehand if you use "International Roaming Service (WORLD WING)". If the limit of maximum charges for use is exceeded, check out your accumulated fee.
There is no incoming call overseas.	Is "Restricting incoming calls" set to "Activate restricting"? → P.184
No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/ Functions for using contents saved in Contacts or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.	Even though a caller notifies the caller ID, it is not displayed on the terminal if the network or network operator does not notify the ID. A notified caller ID may be different from that of the caller by some networks or networks operators you use.

□ Data Management

Trouble	Check and remedy
Data transfer is not performed.	• Do you use USB HUB? When USB HUB is used, the terminal may not be operated correctly.
Data saved in microSD card is not displayed.	• Remove and attach microSD card. → P.461
Image is not displayed.	• If it is not supported image data,  appears in "My Files".
No operation is performed even by connecting the terminal to a PC.	• For Windows XP, upgrade to Windows XP Service Pack 3 or later. • Install Samsung Kies or Windows Media Player 10 or later to a PC.

❑ Bluetooth

Trouble	Check and remedy
Cannot connect to Bluetooth device/ Bluetooth device cannot be found by scanning.	• The Bluetooth device (commercial item) is needed to be in registration stand-by state. If you register the device again after deleting the registration, delete the registrations on both Bluetooth communication device and the terminal, and then perform registration of the devices.
Cannot call from the terminal with external device connected such as car navigation or hands-free device.	• If you make several calls to a person when he or she does not answer the calls or is out of the service area etc., calling the number may become unavailable. Turn the power off then on the terminal.

□ Maps/GPS function

Trouble	Check and remedy
AUTO-GPS service information cannot be set.	• Is AUTO-GPS disabled because battery is low? If AUTO-GPS is disabled due to "Low-power operation settings", AUTO-GPS service information cannot be set. In this case, set "Low-power operation settings" for "AUTO-GPS" to "Not suspend" or charge the battery. → P.60, P.429 • Is "AUTO-GPS operation settings " for "AUTO-GPS" turned off? → P.429

Error messages

Error message	Cause and remedy	Page
The application XXXX (process XXXX) has stopped unexpectedly./ XXXX (XXXX) has stopped*	Appears when an error is occurred in the terminal or function. Tap "Force close"/"OK" and then retry.	—
Airplane mode on. Turn Airplane mode off to make calls.	Appears when you try to make a call with the docomo mini UIM card attached incorrectly or with the Airplane mode is set. Check if the docomo mini UIM card is correctly attached or set the Airplane mode off, and retry.	P.55 P.392
Please wait for a while(Voice service)./ Please wait for a while(Data service).	Appears when communication is restricted due to access congestion on call/communication. Operate again after the restriction is released.	—

Error message	Cause and remedy	Page
Storage space running out Some system functions may not work	Appears when available memory of the system memory (phone) is low. If you keep using the terminal, some functions or applications may not work. Delete data such as one for application or media contents to increase available memory space.	P.131 P.466
Failed to update software. Network or server error occurred. Try later or try using PC Kies.	Communication with the server is failed. Wait for a while and retry the operation or try using "Samsung Kies".	P.540
Sync failed	Appears when different functions are synchronized at the same time. Wait for a while and retry the operation.	P.434
Camera failed	Appears when activating Camera fails. Wait for a while and retry the operation or turn the power off then on the terminal.	P.65, P.300

Error message	Cause and remedy	Page
Disabling built-in apps, may cause errors in other apps	If you disable application, other application linking to the disabled application may not work properly. If other application does not work properly because "OK" is tapped and application is disabled, enable the application.	P.447
USB storage is damaged. Try reformatting it.	Appears when the system memory (phone) may be damaged. Trying "Factory data reset" may improve the symptoms. Note that the operation erases all data saved on the terminal. Make sure to back up necessary data beforehand.	P.432
Unfortunately, XXXX (process. com.android.browser) has stopped.	Appears when an error occurs in the browser. Tap "OK" and wait for a while, then retry the operation.	P.241

Error message	Cause and remedy	Page
There are problems with the security certificate for this site	Appears when requested SSL certificate is not found on the terminal or the saved certificate does not match the requested one. Install compatible certificate to the terminal. If the web page seems secure enough, connect the web page without certificate.	P.443

* XXXX indicates application or function name in which an error is occurred.

Smartphone Anshin Remote Support

By sharing screens of your terminal with NTT DOCOMO, you can receive technical support to make settings. (In Japanese only)

- This service is not available if your docomo mini UIM card is not inserted, during international roaming, or in Airplane mode.
- Smartphone Anshin Remote Support is a service requiring subscription.
- Some operations and settings are not supported.
- For details of Smartphone Anshin Remote Support, refer to NTT DOCOMO's website.

1 Call スマートフォン遠隔サポートセンター (Remote support center for smartphone)



0120-783-360

Business hours 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.
(open all year round)

- When calling Smartphone Anshin Remote Support from the terminal, in the Home screen, tap  → "遠隔サポート (Remote support)" → "このスマートフォンから発信する (Make a call from this smartphone)" → "Dial"/"Phone" → "Always"/"Just once" to dial.

2 From the Home screen, → "遠隔サポート (Remote support)"

- For the first using, agree to "ソフトウェア使用許諾書 (License Agreement)".

- 3** "遠隔サポートの接続画面に進む (Go to Remote support connection screen)"
→ "同意する (Agree)"
- 4** Enter connection number notified by DOCOMO
- 5** Remote support starts when you are connected

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- The terminal is provided with a written warranty. Make sure that you receive it. Check the written contents and items such as "販売店名・お買い上げ日 (Shop name/date of purchase)" and keep it in a safe place. If it does not contain the necessary information, immediately contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
 - This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
 - Since troubles, repair or other handling of the terminal may cause contents in the Contacts etc. to be modified or deleted. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the Contacts data etc., in case.
- * With the terminal, data such as phonebook

entries can be saved to microSD card.

- * Data such as phonebook entries can be backed up to Oazukari Center using ケータイデータお預かりサービス (Data Security service) (subscription is required).

After-Sales Service

When problems occur

Before requesting repair, read the section on "Troubleshooting" in this manual. If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only).

If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office. Be sure to check the business hours of the repair office before you go. Also, you must bring the warranty. Note that, repair may take longer time depending on the state of damage.

■ In the warranty period

- The terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber is charged for the repair without presenting the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse (damage of the display/connector etc.), accident, neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.

■ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases.

- When corrosion due to moisture, condensation, perspiration, etc. is detected, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed (repairs may not be possible if external connection jack/headphone connection jack or the display is damaged, or the terminal outer case is lifted)
- * Even in case that a repair is possible, since those conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair is charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 4 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts etc. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Call the contacts listed on the last page of this manual, "Repairs" (In Japanese only).

Notes

- Do not modify terminal or its accessories.
 - Doing so may cause fire, injury or damage.
 - Modified terminals etc. are repaired only after the customer accepts that the modified parts are to be restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.

The following cases may be regarded as modifications.

 - A sticker etc. is put on the display part or keypad part
 - The terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
 - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO'S genuine parts
 - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove the sticker attached on the terminal. The sticker takes on a role to certify fulfillment of technical regulations. Note that if the sticker is removed, replaced, etc. and contents of the sticker cannot be confirmed, replaced, etc., repairs of the terminal may not be accepted due to the incapability to judge the conformance of technical regulations.
- Data such as settings for each function may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.

- When the repair is executed, MAC address of Wi-Fi/Bluetooth address in the terminal may be changed regardless of repaired part.
- Magnetic components are used in the parts that are described below. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.

Used parts: speaker, earpiece, out-camera, vibrator section (around the Power/screen lock key).

- If the terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn the power off, remove the battery pack, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of terminal.

Precautions on Memory Dial (Contacts function) and downloaded data

Note that data you created, retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the terminal. DOCOMO shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Under some circumstances, DOCOMO may replace your terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it. When replacing your phone, most of the above-mentioned data cannot be transferred to the new phone.

Updating software

Software update

Download revision file for the terminal from the download site on the Internet and update the software. For software update, there are 2 methods; connecting to the network directly on the terminal and using "Samsung Kies" (P.479) installed to a PC.

Precautions on software update

Software update can be done with the data saved to the terminal remained. However, note that depending on your terminal condition (malfunction, damage, water-soaked), the data may not be protected. You are recommended to backup the user information and data in the terminal just in case. However, some data may not be backed up.

- Prepare the followings before software update.
 - Exit all programs running on the terminal (P.138).
 - Charge the terminal (P.62) to make the battery level enough.
- Do not remove the battery pack during software update. Doing so may cause failure of the update and the operations may not be available.

- For updating software by connecting the terminal to network directly, you are recommended to perform in a place with good signal condition, without moving. When the signal condition is bad, software update may be interrupted.
- It may take time to update software (download and installation of update files).
- During installing the update files for software update, all functions including making/receiving phone call are not available.
- When you cannot perform any operations because of the failure of the software update, please take your terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.

Updating software only with the terminal

You can update the software of the terminal by connecting network with the terminal.

1 From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "About device" → "Software update"

2 "Update"

- For the first activation, Terms and conditions or Privacy agreement appears. Read the contents and then mark "I accept all the terms above" and then tap "Confirm".
- If you permit downloading a file only when connecting via Wi-Fi, mark "Wi-Fi only".

3 Set according to the onscreen instructions

- After the software update is completed, the terminal restarts and update starts. During update, some functions such as making calls cannot be used.

Information

- To suspend installation temporarily after downloading software, tap "Later" on the confirmation screen for continuing installation.
When you suspend, installation can be done by the following operations.
 - From the Home screen,  → "Settings" → "General" tab → "About device" → Tap "Software update" → "Update"
 - Open the Notification panel → "Software update"
 - Mark "Scheduled software updates" → "Later"/"Install" → Select time to notify again/set time to install → "OK" when "Install" is selected
- Depending on update contents, available network may be restricted.

Main specifications

□ Phone

Product name		SC-02F
Size		Approx. 137 mm (H) x 70 mm (W) x 8.6 mm (T) (Maximum thickness: Approx. 8.9 mm)
Weight		Approx. 146 g (with battery)
Memory		ROM 32 GB* ¹ RAM 3 GB
Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto): Approx. 390 H
	LTE	Stationary (Auto): Approx. 340 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto): Approx. 310 H
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Approx. 830 min.
	GSM	Approx. 690 min.

Charging time	AC Adapter 04 (optional)	Approx. 140 min.
	AC Adapter 03 (optional)	Approx. 185 min.
	DC Adapter 03 (optional)	Approx. 210 min.
Display section	Type	Organic EL (Full HD Super AMOLED)
	Size	Approx. 5.0 inches
	Number of colors	16,777,216 colors
	Resolution (number of pixels)	1,080 (W) pixels x 1,920 (H) pixels Full HD
Image pickup device	Type	Out-camera: Back-illuminated CMOS In-camera: CMOS
	Size	Out-camera: 1/3.0 inches In-camera: 1/6.0 inches
Number of effective pixels		Out-camera: Approx. 13.2 mil. pixels In-camera: Approx. 2.1 mil. pixels

Number of recording pixels (Max.)		Out-camera: Approx. 12.6 mil. pixels In-camera: Approx. 2.07 mil. pixels
Digital zoom		Up to Approx. 4.0 X (40 levels)
Playing music	Windows Media Audio (WMA) file	Continuous play time Approx. 2,120 min. (Background play supported)
	MP3 file	Continuous play time Approx. 3,420 min. (Background play supported)
Continuous 1 Seg watching time		Approx. 300 min.
Continuous Mobacas watching time		Approx. 270 min.
Display language		Japanese/English/Korean
Input language (character input, voice input)		Character input: Japanese/English/Korean Voice Input: Using Google voice typing

Headphone connection jack		3.5 ϕ earphone jack
	Pole number	Tetrapolar
Wireless LAN		IEEE802.11a/b/g/n/ac ^{*2*3} compliant (IEEE802.11n: 2.4 GHz/5 GHz)
Bluetooth function	Version ^{*4}	Bluetooth standard Ver.4.0
	Output	Bluetooth standard Power Class 1
	Vistaed communication distance ^{*5}	Within approx. 10 m

Bluetooth function	Compatible profile ^{*6}	Object Push Profile (OPP) Headset Profile (HSP) Hands-Free Profile (HFP) Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) Serial Port Profile (SPP) Phone Book Access Profile (PBAP) Human Interface Device Profile (HID) Personal Area Networking Profile (PAN) ^{*7} SIM Access Profile (SAP) Message Access Profile (MAP)
--------------------	----------------------------------	---

*1 Since saving Android OS and preinstalled applications requires memory space, the amount does not indicate actual available memory space.

*2 Compatible with draft IEEE802.11ac. The terminal may not be able to communicate with official-version-compatible devices or draft-version-compatible devices from other companies. For information on compatible devices, visit manufacturers' websites.

- *3 IEEE802.11ac is supported only in 5 GHz band.
- *4 It is confirmed that the terminal and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with Bluetooth standards designated by Bluetooth SIG, and they are authenticated. However, procedures may differ or data transfer may not be possible depending on the device's characteristics or specifications.
- *5 May vary by the signal status and/or whether there is interference between communications devices.
- *6 Standardized connection steps of Bluetooth communication by product property.
- *7 Only PAN User (PANU) is supported.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of the operation time for calling when radio signal reception is normal.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the stand-by time when radio signal reception is normal.

The stand-by time may be decreased as low as half the time depending on the conditions of battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio signal reception in the area (no reception or weak), etc.

- A use of the Internet connection reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Composing emails or starting applications also reduces call (communication)/stand-by time even if you do not call or use the Internet.
- Stationary continuous stand-by time is the estimated average operation time when radio signal reception is normal in the stationary state.

- Charging time is an estimate for charging an empty battery pack with the terminal power off. For charging with the terminal power on, it takes longer.

❑ Battery Pack

Product name	Battery pack SC1 1
Battery used	Li-ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.8V
Nominal capacity	2600mAh

File format

Still images and videos taken with the terminal will be saved in following file formats.

Type	File format	Extension
Still image	JPEG	jpg
Video	MP4	mp4

Shooting number of still images (estimate)

Shooting size	SC-02F (Phone)*	microSD card (1GB)
640 x 480	Up to approx. 250,000 images	Up to approx. 11,000 images

Savable number for 90 KB size images.

* Default savable number.

Shooting time of videos (estimate)

Shooting size	SC-02F (Phone)*	microSD card (1GB)
320 x 240	Up to approx. 3700 min. (up to approx. 60 min. per 1 video)	Up to approx. 155 min. (up to approx. 60 min. per 1 video)

* Default recordable time.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model [SC-02F] mobile phone complies with Japanese technical regulations and international guidelines regarding exposure to radio waves. This mobile phone was designed in observance of Japanese technical regulations regarding exposure to radio waves (*1) and limits to exposure to radio waves recommended by a set of equivalent international guidelines. This set of international guidelines was set out by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is in collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO), and the permissible limits include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health condition.

The technical regulations and international guidelines set out limits for radio waves as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, which is the value of absorbed energy in any 10 grams of tissue over a 6-minute period. The SAR limit for mobile phones is 2.0 W/kg. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone when tested for use at the ear is 0.492 W/kg. There may be slight differences between the SAR levels for each product, but they all satisfy the limit.

The actual SAR of this mobile phone while operating can be well below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum required to reach the network. Therefore in general, the closer you are to a base station, the lower the power output of the device.

This mobile phone can be used in positions other than against your ear. This mobile phone satisfies the international guidelines when used with a carrying case or a wearable accessory approved by NTT DOCOMO, INC.(*2) In case you are not using the approved accessory, please use a product that does not contain any metals, and one that positions the mobile phone at least 1.5 cm away from your body.

The World Health Organization has stated that "a large number of studies have been performed over the last two decades to assess whether mobile phones pose a potential health risk. To date, no adverse health effects have been established as being caused by mobile phone use."

Please refer to the WHO website if you would like more detailed information.

http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/facts_press/fact_english.htm

Please refer to the websites listed below if you would like more detailed information regarding SAR.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications Website:

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses Website:

<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html>

(in Japanese only)

NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/sar/>

SAMSUNG Website:

<http://www.samsung.com/sar/sarMain.do>

→ In Location field, "JAPAN" → In Language field, "English" → In Phone Model field, "SC-02F" → "Go" → Click a link in search results filed.

*1 Technical regulations are defined by the Ministerial Ordinance Related to Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Radio Equipment Regulations).

*2 Regarding the method of measuring SAR when using mobile phones in positions other than against the ear, international standards (IEC62209-2) were set in March of 2010. In regards to national technical standards, in October of 2011, a portion of advisory 118 was reported on based upon the Information and Communications Council's information and communications technology session meeting.

FCC notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF exposure information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.66 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.92 W/kg.

Body-worn operation

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines. Please use an accessory designated for this product or an accessory which contains no metal and which positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of

<http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/> after searching on FCC ID A3LSWDSC02F.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.ctia.org/>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.474 W/kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

Declaration of Conformity

Product details

For the following

Product : GSM WCDMA LTE BT/WiFi
Mobile Phone
Model(s) : SC-02F



Declaration & Applicable standards

We hereby declare, that the product above is in compliance with the essential requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC) by application of:

SAFETY EN 60950-1 : 2006 + A12 : 2011

SAR	EN 50360: 2001/A1:2012	EN 62209-1 : 2006
	EN 62479 : 2010	EN 62209-2 : 2010
	EN 62311 : 2008	

EMC	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (09-2011)	EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (09-2012)
	EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (08-2002)	EN 301 489-24 V1.5.1 (10-2010)
	EN 301 489-7 V1.3.1 (11-2005)	

RADIO	EN 301 511 V9.0.2 (03-2003)	EN 301 908-1 V5.2.1 (05-2011)
	EN 301 908-2 V5.2.1 (07-2011)	EN 301 908-13 V5.2.1 (05-2011)
	EN 300 328 V1.8.1 (06-2012)	EN 301 893 V1.7.1 (06-2012)
	EN 300 440-1 V1.6.1 (08-2010)	EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1 (08-2010)
	EN 302 291-1 V1.1.1 (07-2005)	EN 302 291-2 V1.1.1 (07-2005)

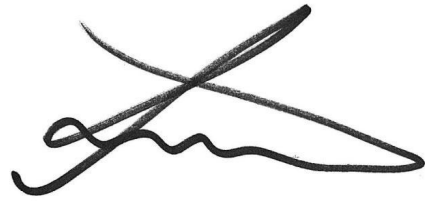
and the Directive (2011/65/EU) on the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex[IV] of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body(ies):

TÜV SÜD BABT, Octagon House, Concorde Way,
Fareham, Hampshire, PO15 5RL, UK ✕
Identification mark: 0168

Representative in the EU

Samsung Electronics Euro QA Lab.
Blackbushe Business Park
Saxony Way, Yateley, Hampshire
GU46 6GG, UK



2013.09.16

(Place and date of issue)

Joong-Hoon Choi / Lab. Manager

(Name and signature of authorized person)

※ This is not the address of Samsung Service Centre. For the address or the phone number of Samsung Service Centre, see the warranty card or contact the retailer where you purchased your product.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). When exporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyrights

The works and copyright of music, video picture, computer program, data base, etc. are protected their right by copyright law. Copying such copyrighted works can be permitted only for the purpose of personal use or use at home. If you copy (including conversion of data format), alter, hand over of duplication, distribute on network, etc. without any approval of copyright owner exceeding above mentioned purposes, you may be claimed for damages or punished as "copyright infringement" or "infringement of moral right of an author". When you make duplications etc. using this product, please observe the copyright law and use them properly. Also, for recorded items using the camera function mounted to this product, please use them properly as above.

Portrait rights

Portrait rights are claimable rights against taking photos by others, publishing or using the taken photos without any permission. In Portrait rights, there are moral right authorized to everyone and property right (publicity right) focused on economic benefit of talent etc. Therefore, taking photos of others or talent, publishing or distributing the photos without any permission are illegal act. Please use the camera function properly.

Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "Xi", "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-α ppli", "Deco-mail", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "sp-mode", "ToruCa", "ToruCa" logo "iD" logo and "Xi" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO.
- microSD logo, microSDHC logo and microSDXC logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.



- Bluetooth and Bluetooth logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and uses them under license.



- Wi-Fi Certified[®] and its logo are registered trademark or trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance.



- "モバキャス" is a registered trademark of Japan Mobilecasting, Inc.
- "NOTTV" is a trademark of mmbi, Inc.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- iWnn[®] OMRON SOFTWARE Co.,Ltd. 2008-2013 All Rights Reserved.
- Microsoft[®], Windows Media[®], and ActiveSync[®] are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- This product software contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and the subsidiaries and affiliate companies in the U.S. and other countries.
Company and product names in this manual, etc., may be trademarks and registered trademarks of each company.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- DivX[®], DivX Certified[®] and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

- "Facebook" is a trademark or registered trademark of Facebook, Inc.
- DLNA, DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks of Digital Living Network Alliance.



- "Twitter" is a trademark or registered trademark of Twitter, Inc.
- HP is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Development Company L.P.
- Other products and company names written in this manual are registered trademarks or trademarks of each company.

Others

- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
 - Windows 8 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 8 (Windows 8, Pro, Enterprise).
 - Windows 7 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 7 (Starter, Home Basic, Home Premium, Professional, Enterprise and Ultimate).
 - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
 - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below.
 - Recording moving pictures that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA.

For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.

Canceling SIM Lock

The SIM lock for the terminal can be unlocked. Non-DOCOMO SIM can be used with the terminal, once SIM Lock is unlocked.

- Please come to docomo Shop to unlock SIM lock.
- Handling fee for unlocking SIM lock occurs.
- When using non-DOCOMO SIM, it cannot be used in LTE. In addition, the service and function may be limited. DOCOMO shall not be liable for performance.
- For details about unlocking SIM lock, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Index

1 Seg	277
"186" (notify)/"184" (not notify)	164

A

AC adapter.....	62
Charging	62
Access point.....	395
Initializing	396
Setting	395
Accounts and backup	431
Additional service	189
Adjusting ringtone volume	405
Airplane mode	392
Answering message	179
Application manager	429, 440
Apps layout setting	161
Apps screen	119, 157
Available services overseas	495

B

Battery pack	57
Attaching the battery pack.....	57
Battery pack life	60
Estimate battery pack operating time ...	61
Estimate charging time	543
Removing the battery pack.....	59

Blocking mode	420
Bluetooth	469
Brightness	407

C

Calculator	361
Calendar	348
Caller ID notification	183
Call forwarding service	182
Call logs	175
Call rejection.....	192
Recorded messages	169
Call settings	182
Call waiting	182
Camera	298
Setting before shooting	303
Shooting screen	300
Shooting still images.....	315
Shooting videos	316
Change home	430
Charging	60
Checking your own phone number	457
Clock.....	343
Alarm.....	344
Stopwatch	346
Timer.....	347
World Clock	345
Connect and share.....	400
Connecting DNLA device	486

Connecting with USB cable	478
"Connections" tab	380
"Controls" tab	422
Copying	91
Cutting.....	91

D

Data usage	394
Declining a call	169
Device manager	438
"Device" tab	401
Dictionary	368
Display (touch screen).....	52
dmarket	254
dmenu	253
docomo backup	362
docomo LIVE UX	142
Kisekae	153
docomo mini UIM card	54
Attaching	55
Removing	56
Security codes	54
Double-tap	72
Drag	72

E

Early Warning "Area Mail"	238
Email	220
Checking received	232

Creating and sending	230
Setting account	221
Settings	223
Entering characters	84
Samsung Japanese keyboard	85
Switching the input method	85

F

Flick	73
-------------	----

G

Gallery	318
"General" tab	429
Gmail	236
Google Maps	342
Route search	342
Google Play	254
GPS	339
Group Play	489

H

Hands-free mode	378
Handwriting input	90
Home screen	111, 142

I

Initial settings	98
------------------------	----

International call (WORLD CALL)	180
International roaming (WORLD WING) ...	494

K

Keyboard input	
Handwriting input	90
Koe-no-Takuhaibin	182

L

LED indicator	409
List of running applications	139
Location services	339
Lock screen	68

M

Machi-chara display	156
Mail	210
Email	220
Gmail	236
SMS	211
sp-mode mail	210
Making a call	162
Call logs	175
International roaming	500
Phonebook	204
Media Player	326
microSD card	460
Attaching	461

Formatting	462
Removing	462
Mobacas	265
Mobile TV	277
Motion	77
Motion control	425
Multi window	113
Music	333
My Files	463
My profile	204

N

Nearby device	487
Network connection	380
Network operators (overseas).....	505, 506
NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Setting	399
Notification LED	101
Notification panel	108
Notification sound setting	406
Number of running applications	139

O

Osaifu-Keitai	257
---------------------	-----

P

Palm motion	79
Pasting	91
Personalization	410

Phonebook	195
Group	202
Making a call	204
Registering.....	195
Player	326
Playing music	333
Play Store	254
POLARIS Office	371
Power saving	448
Printing	485
Public mode (power OFF)	183

Q

Quick search box	132
Quick setting button	108

R

Receiving a call	168
Recently-used applications	138
Rejecting a call	192
Sending SMS	169
Remote function	455
Ringtone setting	406

S

Safety assistance	445
Samsung account	435
Samsung Apps.....	256

Samsung Japanese keyboard	85
Switching keyboard types	88
Wildcard prediction	89
Samsung Kies	479
Samsung Link	482
Screen lock	67, 417
Screen saver	407
Scroll	73
Security code	450
Network security code	452
PIN code	453
PUK code	454
Setting character entry/conversion function	92
Setting for overseas network connection	504
Setting menu items	379
Set up SIM card lock	454
S Finder	137
S Gesture	75
S Health	374
Silent mode	404
SIM change alert	456
Smart screen	427
SMS	211
Checking received	213
Creating and sending	211
S Note	349
Sound & display	401
Specific absorption rate (SAR)	551

Specifications	543
S Planner	348
sp-mode	397
sp-mode mail	210
S Preview	80
Status bar	102
Main notification icon	102
Main status icon	105
Stereo Headset with Microphone ...	170, 510
Still image	315
Shooting	315
Viewing	320
Storage	449
S Voice.....	377
Swipe	72
Switching the orientation of the display ...	82

T

Tap.....	72
Task manager	138
Tethering	389
ToruCa	263
Touch and hold.....	72
Touch screen	71
TouchWiz Basic mode	111
TouchWiz Easy mode	116
Turning power ON/OFF	65

U

Updating software 540

V

Vibrator setting 406

Video 315

 Playing 320, 328

 Shooting 316

Voice and input methods 422

Voice mail service 182

Voice Recorder 357

Volume setting 405

VPN 397

W

Wallpaper 419

Web browser 241

Wi-Fi 381

WORLD CALL 180

Y

YouTube 366

Z

Zoom in/out 73

Please ask checking/changing subscription detail, application of various services and request of various information materials online.

From sp-mode dmenu ⇒ "お客様サポート (Customer support)" ⇒ "各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)"
[Packet communication charge free]
(In Japanese only)

From a PC My docomo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)
(In Japanese only)

- * For use from sp-mode, "Network security code" is required.
- * For use of sp-mode, a charge may be applied for some services.
- * For use from a PC, "docomo ID/Password" is required.
- * If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "docomo ID/Password", contact "General Inquiries" on the back cover page.
- * You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
- * There are cases where the site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.

Use mobile phone with your manners!

Remember to be courteous to others when you use your terminal.

Always turn OFF your terminal in cases below

■ In a place where use of mobile phones is prohibited

Follow the instructions of each airline or medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises. Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited.

Always set to public mode in case below

■ **When driving**

A penalty may be imposed for using by holding a mobile phone while driving.

Absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.

■ **When you are in a public place such as a theater, movie theater, or museum**

Using the terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Be considerate of where you use your terminal and keep your voice and ringtone down

■ **Keep your voice down in quiet places like restaurants and hotel lobbies, etc.**

■ **If you are in an outdoor public place, make sure you do not disturb others.**

Respect privacy

- ! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions for maintaining good manners in public places

There are some advanced settings such as not answering incoming call or muting sound, etc.

■ Public mode (power OFF) (P.183)

Tells the caller via a guidance message that receiver need to turn the power off, and the call ends automatically.

■ Vibration (P.406)

Notify the call by vibration.

■ Silent mode (Mute, Vibrate) (P.404)

Mute sound/ringtone, etc.

※ Shutter sound cannot be muted.

Besides these things, option services such as Voice Mail Service (P.182), Call Forwarding Service (P.182), etc. are available.



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Bring no longer needed mobile telephones, etc. to your nearest docomo Shop to be recycled regardless of whether the products were manufactured by DOCOMO or by other companies.

- * Recyclables: mobile telephones, PHS, batteries, battery chargers, tabletop stands (regardless of whether manufactured by DOCOMO or by other companies)

For loss, theft, malfunction, and inquiries while overseas (24-hour reception)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

**International call
access code for the
country you stay**

-81-3-6832-6600*
(toll free)

- * You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
- ※ If you use SC-02F, you should dial the number +81-3-6832-6600 (to enter "+", touch and hold "0" key).

From land-line phone <Universal number>

**Universal number
international prefix**

-8000120-0151*

- * You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
- ※ For international call access codes for major countries and universal number international prefix, refer to DOCOMO International Service website.
- If you lose your terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the terminal.
- If the terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.

General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>



0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish

* Unavailable from part of IP phones.

(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.)

■ From DOCOMO mobile phones
(In Japanese only)



(No prefix) **151** (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones,
etc.

(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round))

■ From land-line phones
(In Japanese only)



0120-800-000
(toll free)

* Unavailable from part of IP
phones.

Repairs

■ From DOCOMO mobile phones
(In Japanese only)



(No prefix) **113** (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones,
etc.

(Business hours: 24 hours (open all year round))

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please
contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo
Shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website.

NTT DOCOMO website <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/>

■ From land-line phones
(In Japanese only)



0120-800-000
(toll free)

* Unavailable from part of IP
phones.

Inquiries for sample accessories

■ Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

072-830-6075 (In Japanese only)

Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. (except for Saturday,
Sunday, year-end through New Year holidays, public holidays)

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● Check the supplied sample accessories in this manual.



Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to
show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.



Li-ion 00

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.

Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

'13.10 (1st Edition)